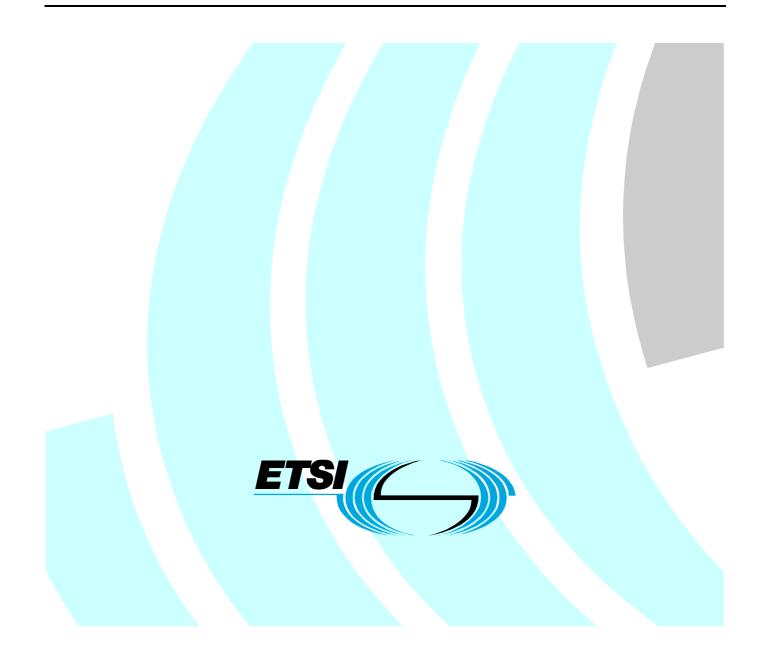
# Final draft ETSI ES 201 488-3 V1.2.2 (2003-08)

ETSI Standard

Access and Terminals (AT); Data Over Cable Systems; Part 3: Baseline Privacy Plus Interface Specification



Reference RES/AT-020045-3

Keywords access, broadband, cable, data, IPcable

#### ETSI

#### 650 Route des Lucioles F-06921 Sophia Antipolis Cedex - FRANCE

Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16

Siret N° 348 623 562 00017 - NAF 742 C Association à but non lucratif enregistrée à la Sous-Préfecture de Grasse (06) N° 7803/88

#### Important notice

Individual copies of the present document can be downloaded from: <u>http://www.etsi.org</u>

The present document may be made available in more than one electronic version or in print. In any case of existing or perceived difference in contents between such versions, the reference version is the Portable Document Format (PDF). In case of dispute, the reference shall be the printing on ETSI printers of the PDF version kept on a specific network drive within ETSI Secretariat.

Users of the present document should be aware that the document may be subject to revision or change of status. Information on the current status of this and other ETSI documents is available at http://portal.etsi.org/tb/status/status.asp

> If you find errors in the present document, send your comment to: editor@etsi.org

#### **Copyright Notification**

No part may be reproduced except as authorized by written permission. The copyright and the foregoing restriction extend to reproduction in all media.

> © European Telecommunications Standards Institute 2003. All rights reserved.

**DECT**<sup>TM</sup>, **PLUGTESTS**<sup>TM</sup> and **UMTS**<sup>TM</sup> are Trade Marks of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members. **TIPHON**<sup>TM</sup> and the **TIPHON logo** are Trade Marks currently being registered by ETSI for the benefit of its Members. **3GPP**<sup>TM</sup> is a Trade Mark of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members and of the 3GPP Organizational Partners.

# Contents

Intelle	ectual Property Rights	8
Forew	ord	8
1	Scope	9
1.1	Requierements	9
2	References	10
3	Abbreviations	11
4	Purpose	12
4.1	Void	
4.2	Background	
4.2.1	Service Goals	
4.2.2	Statement of compatibility	12
5	Baseline privacy plus overview	13
5.1	Architectural overview	13
5.1.1	Packet data encryption	13
5.1.2	Key management protocol	
5.1.3	BPI+ security associations	
5.1.4	QoS SIDs and BPI+ SAIDs	
5.2	Operational overview	
5.2.1	Cable modem initialization	
5.2.2	Cable modem key update mechanism	16
6	Data Over Cable system MAC frame formats	
6.1	Variable-length packet data PDU MAC frame format	
6.2	Fragmentation MAC frame format	19
6.3	Requirements on usage of BP extended header element in MAC header	20
7	Baseline Privacy Key Management (BPKM) protocol	20
7 7.1	Baseline Privacy Key Management (BPKM) protocol	
	Baseline Privacy Key Management (BPKM) protocol State models Introduction	20
7.1	State models Introduction Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping	20 20 23
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.1.2	State models Introduction Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping Security capabilities selection	20 20 23 23
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.1.2 7.1.2	State models Introduction Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping Security capabilities selection Authorization state machine	20 20 23 23 23 24
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.2 7.1.2 7.1.2.1	State models Introduction Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping Security capabilities selection Authorization state machine States	20 20 23 23 24 24 26
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.1.2 7.1.2 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1	State models         Introduction.         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         .1	
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.2 7.1.2 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1	State models       Introduction.         Introduction.       Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection       Authorization state machine         States       States         .1       Start         .2       Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)	20 20 23 23 24 26 26 26 26
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.2 7.1.2 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1	State models       Introduction.         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         .1         Start         .2         Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)         .3	20 20 23 23 24 26 26 26 26 26
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.2 7.1.2 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1	State models       Introduction.         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         .1         Start         .2         Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)         .3         Authorized         .4	20 20 23 23 24 26 26 26 26 26 26 26 26
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.2 7.1.2 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1	State models       Introduction.         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         .1       Start         .2       Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)         .3       Authorized         .4       Reauthorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         .5       Authorize Reject Wait (Auth Reject Wait)	
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.2 7.1.2 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1	State models       Introduction.         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         .1       Start         .2       Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)         .3       Authorized         .4       Reauthorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         .5       Authorize Reject Wait (Auth Reject Wait)         .6       Silent	
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.2 7.1.2 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.2	State models       Introduction.         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         .1       Start         .2       Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)         .3       Authorized         .4       Reauthorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         .5       Authorize Reject Wait (Auth Reject Wait)         .6       Silent         .4       Messages	
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.2 7.1.2 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2	State models       Introduction.         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         .1       Start         .2       Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)         .3       Authorized         .4       Reauthorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         .5       Authorize Reject Wait (Auth Reject Wait)         .6       Silent         .1       Authorize Reject Wait (Auth Request)	
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2	State models       Introduction.         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         .1       Start         .2       Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)         .3       Authorized         .4       Reauthorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         .5       Authorize Reject Wait (Auth Reject Wait)         .6       Silent         .7       Messages         .1       Authorization Request (Auth Request)	20 20 23 23 24 26 
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2	State models       Introduction.         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         .1         Start         .2         Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)         .3         Authorized         .4         Reauthorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         .5         Authorize Reject Wait (Auth Reject Wait)         .6         Silent         .4         Messages         .1         .2         Authorization Request (Auth Request)         .2         .3         Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .3	20 20 23 23 24 26 
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2	State models       Introduction         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         .1       Start         .2       Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)         .3       Authorized         .4       Reauthorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         .5       Authorize Reject Wait (Auth Reject Wait)         .6       Silent         .7       Messages         .1       Authorization Request (Auth Request)         .2       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)	20 $20$ $20$ $20$ $23$ $23$ $24$ $26$ $.$
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2	State models         Introduction         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         .1         Start         .2         Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)         .3         Authorized         .4         Reauthorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         .5         Authorize Reject Wait (Auth Reject Wait)         .6         Silent         .6         .1         Authorization Request (Auth Request)         .2         .3         Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .3         .4         Authorization Reply (Auth Reject)         .3         .4         Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .3         .4         Authorization Invalid (Auth Invalid)         .4         Authorization Information (Authent Info)	
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2	State models         Introduction         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         .1       Start         .2       Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)         .3       Authorized         .4       Reauthorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         .5       Authorize Reject Wait (Auth Reject Wait)         .6       Silent         .1       Authorization Request (Auth Request)         .2       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .3       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .4       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .5       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .6       Silent         .2       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .3       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .3       Authorization Invalid (Auth Invalid)         .5       Authorization Information (Authent Info)         .5       Authentication Information (Authent Info)	
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2	State models         Introduction         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         .1       Start         .2       Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)         .3       Authorized         .4       Reauthorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         .5       Authorize Reject Wait (Auth Reject Wait)         .6       Silent         .7       Messages         .1       Authorization Request (Auth Request)         .2       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .3       Authorization Reply (Auth Reject)         .4       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .5       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .3       Authorization Reject (Auth Reject)         .4       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .3       Authorization Invalid (Auth Invalid)         .4       Authorization Information (Authent Info)         .5       Authentication Information (Authent Info)         .1       Provisioned	
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3	State models       Introduction.         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         .1       Start         .2       Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)         .3       Authorized         .4       Reauthorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         .5       Authorize Reject Wait (Auth Reject Wait)         .6       Silent         .6       Silent         .7       Messages         .1       Authorization Request (Auth Request)         .2       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .3       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .4       Authorization Replect (Auth Reject)         .4       Authorization Replect (Auth Replex)         .1       Authorization Replect (Auth Replex)         .2       Authorization Invalid (Auth Invalid)         .3       Authorization Information (Authent Info)         Events       Events         .1       Provisioned         .2       Timeout	
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.2 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3	State models       Introduction         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         .1       Start         .2       Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)         .3       Authorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         .3       Authorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         .5       Authorize Reject Wait (Auth Reject Wait)         .6       Silent         .6       Silent         .7       Authorization Request (Auth Request)         .2       Authorization Request (Auth Regiet)         .3       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .3       Authorization Invalid (Auth Invalid)         .4       Authorization Invalid (Auth Reject)         .4       Authorization Invalid (Auth Invalid)         .5       Authorization Invalid (Auth Invalid)         .5       Authentication Information (Authent Info)         Events       Events         .1       Provisioned         .2       Timeout         .3       Authorization Grace Timeout (Auth Grace Timeout)	
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.2 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3	State models       Introduction.         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         .1         Stat         .2         Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)         .3         Authorized.         .4         Reauthorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         .5         Authorize Reject Wait (Auth Reject Wait)         .6         Silent         .6         Silent         .1         Authorization Request (Auth Reguest)         .2         Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .3         Authorization Invalid (Auth Invalid)         .5         .6         Silent         .1         Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .3         Authorization Invalid (Auth Invalid)         .5         Authorization Information (Authent Info)         Events         .1         Provisioned         .2         Timeout         .3       Authorization Grace Timeout (Auth Grace Timeout)	
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3	State models       Introduction         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         .1       Start         .2       Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)         .3       Authorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         .3       Authorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         .4       Reauthorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         .5       Authorize Reject Wait (Auth Reject Wait)         .6       Silent         .6       Silent         .1       Authorization Request (Auth Request)         .2       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .3       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .3       Authorization Reject (Auth Reject)         .4       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         .3       Authorization Reject (Auth Reject)         .4       Authorization Invalid (Auth Invalid)         .5       Authorization Information (Authent Info)         .5       Events         .1       Provisioned         .2       Timeout         .3       Authorization Grace Timeout (Auth Grace Timeout)         .4       Reauthorize (Reauth)         .5	
7.1 7.1.1 7.1.1.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.1 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.2 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3 7.1.2.3	State models       Introduction.         Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping         Security capabilities selection         Authorization state machine         States         1       Start         2       Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)         3       Authorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         3       Authorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         4       Reauthorize Wait (Reauth Wait)         5       Authorize Reject Wait (Auth Reject Wait)         6       Silent         9       Messages         1       Authorization Request (Auth Request)         2       Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)         3       Authorization Reply (Auth Invalid)         4       Authorization Invalid (Auth Invalid)         5       Authorization Information (Authent Info)         6       Events         7       Authorization Grace Timeout (Auth Grace Timeout)         4       Reauthorize (Reauth)         5       Authorization Invalid (Auth Invalid)         6       Permanent Authorization Reject (Perm Auth Reject	

7.1.2.3.9	[TEK] Authorized	
7.1.2.3.10	[TEK] Authorization Pending (Auth Pend)	
7.1.2.3.11	[TEK] Authorization Complete (Auth Comp)	
7.1.2.4	Parameters	
7.1.2.4.1	Authorize Wait Timeout (Auth Wait Timeout)	
7.1.2.4.2	Reauthorize Wait Timeout (Reauth Wait Timeout)	
7.1.2.4.3	Authorization Grace Time (Auth Grace Timeout)	
7.1.2.4.4	Authorize Reject Wait Timeout (Auth Reject Wait Timeout)	
7.1.2.5	Actions	
7.1.3	TEK state machine	
7.1.3.1	States	
7.1.3.1.1	Start	
7.1.3.1.2	Operational Wait (Op Wait)	
7.1.3.1.2	Operational Reauthorize Wait (Op Reauth Wait)	
7.1.3.1.4	Operational	
7.1.3.1.4	Rekey Wait	
	•	
7.1.3.1.6	Rekey Reauthorize Wait (Rekey Reauth Wait)	
7.1.3.2	Messages	
7.1.3.2.1	Key Request	
7.1.3.2.2	Key Reply	
7.1.3.2.3	Key Reject	
7.1.3.2.4	TEK Invalid	
7.1.3.3	Events	
7.1.3.3.1	Stop	
7.1.3.3.2	Authorized	
7.1.3.3.3	Authorization Pending (Auth Pend)	
7.1.3.3.4	Authorization Complete (Auth Comp)	
7.1.3.3.5	TEK Invalid	
7.1.3.3.6	Timeout	
7.1.3.3.7	TEK Refresh Timeout	
7.1.3.4	Parameters	
7.1.3.4.1	Operational Wait Timeout	
7.1.3.4.2	Rekey Wait Timeout	
7.1.3.4.3	TEK Grace Time	
7.1.3.5	Actions	
7.2	Key management message formats	
7.2.1	Packet formats	
7.2.1.1	Authorization Request (Auth Request)	
7.2.1.2	Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)	
7.2.1.3	Authorization Reject (Auth Reject)	
7.2.1.3	Key Request	
7.2.1.5	Key Reply	
7.2.1.6	Key Reject	
7.2.1.7	Authorization Invalid	
7.2.1.7	TEK Invalid	
7.2.1.9 7.2.1.10	Authentication Information (Authent Info)	
	SA Map Request (MAP Request)	
7.2.1.11	SA Map Reply (Map Reply)	
7.2.1.12	SAID Map Reject (Map Reject)	
7.2.2	BPKM attributes	
7.2.2.1	Serial-Number	
7.2.2.2	Manufacturer-ID	
7.2.2.3	MAC-Address	
7.2.2.4	RSA-Public-Key	
7.2.2.5	CM-Identification	
7.2.2.6	Display-String	
7.2.2.7	AUTH-Key	
7.2.2.8	ТЕК	
7.2.2.9	Key-Lifetime	
7.2.2.10	Key-Sequence-Number	
7.2.2.11	HMAC-Digest	
7.2.2.12	SAID	

7.2.2.13	TEK-Parameters	52
7.2.2.14	CBC-IV	
7.2.2.15	Error-Code	
7.2.2.16	Vendor-Defined	
7.2.2.17	CA-Certificate	
7.2.2.18	CM-Certificate	
7.2.2.19	Security-Capabilities	
7.2.2.20	Cryptographic-Suite	
7.2.2.21	Cryptographic-Suite-List	
7.2.2.22	BPI-Version	
7.2.2.23	SA-Descriptor	
7.2.2.24	SA-Type	
7.2.2.25	SA-Query	
7.2.2.26	SA-Query-Type	
7.2.2.27	IP-Address	
7.2.2.28	Download-Parameters	60
8 D	ynamic SA mapping	61
8.1	Introduction	
8.2	Theory of operation	
8.3	SA mapping state model	
8.3.1	States	64
8.3.1.1	Start	
8.3.1.2	Map Wait	
8.3.1.3	Mapped	
8.3.2	Messages	
8.3.2.1	SA Map Request (Map Request)	64
8.3.2.2	SA Map Reply (Map Reply)	
8.3.2.3	SA Map Reject (Map Reject)	
8.3.3	Events	64
8.3.3.1	Map	64
8.3.3.2	Unmap	65
8.3.3.3	Map Reply	65
8.3.3.4	Map Reject	65
8.3.3.5	Timeout	65
8.3.3.6	Max Retries	65
8.3.4	Parameters	65
8.3.4.1	SA Map Wait Timeout	65
8.3.4.2	SA Map Max Retries	
8.3.5	Actions	
8.4	IP multicast traffic and dynamic SAs	66
9 K	ey usage	67
9 K 9.1		
9.1 9.2	CMTS Cable Modem (CM)	
9.2 9.3	Authentication of Data Over Cable System v1.1 dynamic service requests	
9.5	Authentication of Data Over Cable System v1.1 dynamic service requests	
10 C	ryptographic Methods	71
10.1	Packet Data Encryption	71
10.2	Encryption of TEK	71
10.3	HMAC-Digest algorithm	72
10.4	Derivation of TEKs, KEKs and message authentication keys	
10.5	Public-key encryption of authorization key	
10.6	Digital signatures	73
10.7	Supporting alternative algorithms	73
11 Pl	nysical protection of keys in the CM and CMTS	72
12 B	PI+ X.509 certificate profile and management	74
12.1	BPI+ certificate management architecture overview	
12.2	Certificate format	
12.2.1	tbsCertificate.validity.notBefore and tbsCertificate.validity.notAfter	
12.2.2	tbsCertificate.serialNumber	
12.2.3	tbsCertificate.signature and signatureAlgorithm	77

12.2.4 tbsCertificate.issuer and tbsCertificate.subject	77
12.2.4.1 Data Over Cable System root certificate	
12.2.4.2 Data Over Cable System manufacturer certificate	
12.2.4.3 Cable modem certificate	
12.2.5 tbsCertificate.subjectPublicKeyInfo	
12.2.6 tbsCertificate.issuerUniqueID and tbsCertificate.subject	
12.2.7 tbsCertificate.extensions	
12.2.7.1 Cable modem certificates	
12.2.7.2 Data Over Cable System manufacturer CA certificat	
12.2.7.3 Data Over Cable System root CA certificate	
12.2.8 signatureValue	
12.3 Cable Modem certificate storage and management in the CM	
12.4 Certificate processing and management in the CMTS 12.4.1 CMTS certificate management model	
12.4.1CMTS certificate management model12.4.2Certificate validation	
12.4.2 Certificate validation	
12.4.4 Manufacturer CA and CM certificate hot lists	
12.7.7 Manufacturer CA and CM certificate not fists	
Annex A (normative): TFTP configuration file extensi	ons85
A.1 Encodings	
A.1.1 Baseline privacy configuration setting	
A.1.1.1 Internal baseline privacy encodings	
A.1.1.1.1 Authorize wait timeout	
A.1.1.1.2 Reauthorize Wait Timeout	
A.1.1.1.3 Authorization Grace Time	
A.1.1.1.4 Operational Wait Timeout A.1.1.1.5 Rekey Wait Timeout	
A.1.1.1.5Rekey Wait TimeoutA.1.1.1.6TEK Grace Time	
A.1.1.1.7 Authorize Reject Wait Timeout	
A.1.1.1.8 SA Map Wait Timeout	
A.1.1.1.9 SA Map Wat Thicout	
-	
A.2 Parameter guidelines	
Annex B (informative): Example messages, certificates	and PDUs89
B.1 Notation	
B.2 Authentication info	
B.2.1 CA certificate details	
B.3 Authorization request	91
B.3.1 CM certificate details	
B.4 Authorization reply	
B.4.1 RSA encryption details	
B.4.2 RSA decryption details	
B.4.3 Hashing details	
B.4.3.1 KEK	
B.4.3.2 Message authentication keys	
B.4.3.3 Mask-Generation Function (MGF)	
B.5 Key request	
B.5.1 HMAC digest details	
-	
B.6 Key reply	
B.6.1 TEK encryption details	
B.6.2 HMAC details	
B.7 Packet PDU encryption	
B.7.1 CBC only	
B.7.2 CBC with residual block processing	
B.7.3 Runt frame	
B.7.4 40-bit key	

B.8.2       Upstream       107         B.9       Fragmented packet encryption       108         Annex C (informative):       BPI/BPI+ interoperability       110         C.1       Data Over Cable System V1.0/v1.1 interoperability Requirements       110         C.2       Data Over Cable System BPI/BPI+ Interoperability Requirements       110         C.3       BPI 40-bit DES export mode considerations       111         C.4       System operation       112         C.4.1       CMTS with BPI capability       112         C.4.2       CMTS with BPI capability       112         C.4.1       CMTS with BPI+ capability       112         C.4.2       CMTS with BPI+ capability       112         Annex D (normative):       Verifying downloaded operational software       113         D.1       Introduction       113         D.2       Overview       113         D.3       Code file requirements       116         D.3.1.1       Code System PKCS#7 signed data       117         D.3.1.1       Code file requirements       120         D.3.1.2       Code file requirements       120         D.3.1.2       Code file requirements       120         D.3.1.1       Code signing requirements	B.8 B.8.1	Encryption of packet PDU with payload header suppression Downstream	
Annex C (informative):       BPI/BPI+ interoperability       110         C.1       Data Over Cable System v1.0/v1.1 interoperability       110         C.2       Data Over Cable System BPI/BPI+ Interoperability Requirements       110         C.3       BPI 40-bit DES export mode considerations       111         C.4       System operation       112         C.4.1       CMTS with BPI capability       112         C.4.2       CMTS with BPI capability       112         Annex D (normative):       Verifying downloaded operational software       113         D.1       Introduction       113         D.2       Overview       113         D.3       Code life requirements       116         D.3.1.1       Data Gref ice requirements       116         D.3.1.1       Code Verification Certificate Format       117         D.3.1.2       Code Verification Certificate Format       120         D.3.2.1       Subject organization names       120         D.3.2.1       Subject organization names       120         D.3.2.1       Subject organization names       120         D.3.2.2       Time varying controls       121         D.3.3.2       Processing the configuration file CVC       123 <td< td=""><td></td><td>-</td><td></td></td<>		-	
C.1       Data Over Cable System V1.0/v1.1 interoperability.       110         C.2       Data Over Cable System BPI/BPI+ Interoperability Requirements.       110         C.3       BPI 40-bit DES export mode considerations.       111         C.4       System operation       112         C.4.1       CMTS with BPI capability.       112         C.4.2       CMTS with BPI capability.       112         Annex D (normative):       Verifying downloaded operational software       113         D.1       Introduction       113         D.2       Overview       115         D.3.1       Code upgrade requirements       116         D.3.1.1       Code Verification Certificate Format.       118         D.3.1.2       Code of Verification Certificate Format.       120         D.3.2       Code file access controls       120         D.3.2       Signed content       120         D.3.1.3       Certificate revocation       120         D.3.2.1       Signed content       120         D.3.2       Code file access controls       120         D.3.2       Signed content       120         D.3.2       Signed content       121         D.3.3       Cable modem code upgrade initialization	Б.9		
C.2       Data Over Cable System BPI/BPI+ Interoperability Requirements.       110         C.3       BPI 40-bit DES export mode considerations.       111         C.4       System operation.       112         C.4.1       CMTS with BPI capability.       112         C.4.2       CMTS with BPI - capability.       112         Annex D (normative):       Verifying downloaded operational software       113         D.1       Introduction       113         D.2       Overview       113         D.3       Code file requirements       116         D.3.1.1       Data Over Cable System PKCS#7 signed data       117         D.3.1.1.1       Code signing keys       117         D.3.1.2       Code ortificatic Certificate Format       120         D.3.1.2       Signed content       120         D.3.2       Code file access controls       120         D.3.2       Subject organization names       120         D.3.2.2       Time varying controls.       121         D.3.3       Date over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements.       121         D.3.3.1       Manufacturer initialization       121         D.3.2.2       Processing the configuration file CVC.       123         D.3.3.2	Anne	ex C (informative): BPI/BPI+ interoperability	110
C.3       BPI 40-bit DES export mode considerations.       111         C.4       System operation       112         C.4.1       CMTS with BPI capability       112         C.4.2       CMTS with BPI capability       112         Annex D (normative):       Verifying downloaded operational software       113         D.1       Introduction       113         D.2       Overview       113         D.3       Code upgrade requirements       116         D.3.1       Code file requirements       116         D.3.1.1       Data Over Cable System PKCS#7 signed data       117         D.3.1.2       Code eigning keys       117         D.3.1.1.2       Code verification Certificate Format       120         D.3.1.2       Code file access controls       120         D.3.2       Code file access controls       120         D.3.2       Code file access controls       121         D.3.3       Cable modem code upgrade initialization       121         D.3.3.1       Manufacturer initialization       121         D.3.3.2       Processing the configuration file CVC       123         D.3.3.2       Processing the configuration file CVC       123         D.3.4       Code signing requirements	C.1	Data Over Cable System v1.0/v1.1 interoperability	110
C.4       System operation       112         C.4.1       CMTS with BPI capability       112         C.4.2       CMTS with BPI+ capability       112         Annex D (normative):       Verifying downloaded operational software       113         D.1       Introduction       113         D.2       Overview       113         D.3       Code upgrade requirements       115         D.3.1       Data Over Cable System PKCS#7 signed data       117         D.3.1.1       Data Over Cable System PKCS#7 signed data       117         D.3.1.2       Code verification Certificate Format       120         D.3.1.2       Code file access controls       120         D.3.1.2       Sugned content       120         D.3.1.3       Code file access controls       120         D.3.2       Code file access controls       120         D.3.2.1       Subject organization names       120         D.3.3       Cable modem code upgrade initialization       121         D.3.3.2       Network initialization       121         D.3.3.2       Network initialization       122         D.3.3.2       Processing the SMMP CVC       123         D.3.4       Code signing requirements       125	C.2	Data Over Cable System BPI/BPI+ Interoperability Requirements	110
C.4.1       CMTS with BPI capability       112         C.4.2       CMTS with BPI - capability       112         Annex D (normative):       Verifying downloaded operational software       113         D.1       Introduction       113         D.2       Overview       113         D.3       Code upgrade requirements       115         D.3.1       Data Over Cable System PKC\$#7 signed data       117         D.3.1.1       Code signing keys       117         D.3.1.2       Code Verification Certificate Format       118         D.3.1.2       Code Verification Certificate Format       120         D.3.1.2       Signed content       120         D.3.1.2       Signed content       120         D.3.2.1       Subject organization names       120         D.3.2.2       Time varying controls       121         D.3.3       Cable modem code upgrade initialization       121         D.3.3.2       Network initialization       121         D.3.3.2       Network initialization       121         D.3.3.2       Processing the SNMP CVC       123         D.3.4       Code signing requirements       125         D.3.4       Code verification steps       125	C.3	BPI 40-bit DES export mode considerations	111
C.4.1       CMTS with BPI capability       112         C.4.2       CMTS with BPI - capability       112         Annex D (normative):       Verifying downloaded operational software       113         D.1       Introduction       113         D.2       Overview       113         D.3       Code upgrade requirements       115         D.3.1       Data Over Cable System PKC\$#7 signed data       117         D.3.1.1       Code signing keys       117         D.3.1.2       Code Verification Certificate Format       118         D.3.1.2       Code Verification Certificate Format       120         D.3.1.2       Signed content       120         D.3.1.2       Signed content       120         D.3.2.1       Subject organization names       120         D.3.2.2       Time varying controls       121         D.3.3       Cable modem code upgrade initialization       121         D.3.3.2       Network initialization       121         D.3.3.2       Network initialization       121         D.3.3.2       Processing the SNMP CVC       123         D.3.4       Code signing requirements       125         D.3.4       Code verification steps       125	C 4	System operation	112
C.4.2       CMTS with BPI+ capability.       112         Annex D (normative):       Verifying downloaded operational software       113         D.1       Introduction       113         D.2       Overview       113         D.3       Code upgrade requirements       115         D.3.1       Code file requirements       116         D.3.1.1       Data Over Cable System PKCS#7 signed data       117         D.3.1.1.2       Code Verification Certificate Format       118         D.3.1.2       Signed content       120         D.3.1.3       Certificate revocation       120         D.3.2       Code file access controls       120         D.3.2.1       Subject organization names       120         D.3.2       Code file access controls       120         D.3.3       Cable modem code upgrade initialization       121         D.3.3       Cable modem code upgrade initialization       121         D.3.3.1       Manufacturer initialization       121         D.3.3.2       Processing the configuration file CVC       123         D.3.4       Code signing requirements       124         D.3.4.1       Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements       124         D.3.4		• •	
D.1       Introduction       113         D.2       Overview       113         D.3       Code upgrade requirements       115         D.3.1       Code file requirements       116         D.3.1.1       Data Over Cable System PKCS#7 signed data       117         D.3.1.1.1       Code signing keys       117         D.3.1.2       Code Verification Certificate Format.       120         D.3.1.2       Signed content       120         D.3.2.1       Subject organization names       120         D.3.2.2       Time varying controls       120         D.3.3.1       Manufacturer initialization       121         D.3.3       Cable modem code upgrade initialization       121         D.3.3.2.1       Processing the configuration file CVC       123         D.3.4.2       Processing the SNMP CVC       123         D.3.4.3       Code signing requirements       124         D.3.4.4       Code signing requirements       124         D.3.4.1       Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements       124         D.3.4.3       MSO requirements       125         D.3.5       Code verification steps       125         D.3.6       DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability       12	C.4.2		
D.2       Overview       113         D.3       Code upgrade requirements       115         D.3.1       Code file requirements       116         D.3.1.1       Data Over Cable System PKCS#7 signed data       117         D.3.1.1.2       Code Verification Certificate Format.       118         D.3.1.2       Code file access controls       120         D.3.2       Code file access controls       120         D.3.2.2       Time varying controls       120         D.3.3       Cable modem code upgrade initialization       121         D.3.3       Cable modem code upgrade initialization       121         D.3.3       Cable modem code upgrade initialization       121         D.3.3.2       Network initialization       121         D.3.3.2       Network initialization       121         D.3.3.2.1       Processing the configuration file CVC       123         D.3.4       Code signing requirements       124         D.3.4.1       Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements       124         D.3.4.2       Maunfacturing requirements       125         D.3.5       Code verification steps       125         D.3.6       DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability       127         D.3.7 </th <th>Anne</th> <th>ex D (normative): Verifying downloaded operational software</th> <th></th>	Anne	ex D (normative): Verifying downloaded operational software	
D.3       Code upgrade requirements       115         D.3.1       Code file requirements       116         D.3.1.1       Data Over Cable System PKCS#7 signed data       117         D.3.1.1       Code signing keys       117         D.3.1.1.2       Code Verification Certificate Format       118         D.3.1.2       Signed content       120         D.3.1.2       Signed content       120         D.3.2       Code file access controls       120         D.3.2.2       Time varying controls       121         D.3.3       Cable modem code upgrade initialization       121         D.3.3       Cable modem code upgrade initialization       121         D.3.3.1       Manufacturer initialization       122         D.3.3.2       Network initialization       122         D.3.3.1       Processing the configuration file CVC       123         D.3.4       Code signing requirements       124         D.3.4       Code signing requirements       125         D.3.4       Code signing requirements       125         D.3.5       Code verification steps       125         D.3.4       Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements       125         D.3.5       Code verific	D.1	Introduction	113
D.3.1Code file requirements116D.3.1.1Data Over Cable System PKCS#7 signed data117D.3.1.1.2Code Verification Certificate Format118D.3.1.1.2Code Verification Certificate Format118D.3.1.1.3Certificate revocation120D.3.1.2Signed content120D.3.2Code file access controls120D.3.2.1Subject organization names120D.3.2.2Time varying controls121D.3.3Cable modem code upgrade initialization121D.3.3Cable modem code upgrade initialization121D.3.3.1Manufacturer initialization122D.3.3.2Network initialization122D.3.3.2.1Processing the configuration file CVC123D.3.4Code signing requirements124D.3.4.1Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements124D.3.4.2Manufacturing requirements125D.3.5Code verification steps125D.3.6DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability127D.3.7Error codes127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130	D.2	Overview	113
D.3.1Code file requirements116D.3.1.1Data Over Cable System PKCS#7 signed data117D.3.1.1.2Code Verification Certificate Format118D.3.1.1.2Code Verification Certificate Format118D.3.1.1.3Certificate revocation120D.3.1.2Signed content120D.3.2Code file access controls120D.3.2.1Subject organization names120D.3.2.2Time varying controls121D.3.3Cable modem code upgrade initialization121D.3.3Cable modem code upgrade initialization121D.3.3.1Manufacturer initialization122D.3.3.2Network initialization122D.3.3.2.1Processing the configuration file CVC123D.3.4Code signing requirements124D.3.4.1Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements124D.3.4.2Manufacturing requirements125D.3.5Code verification steps125D.3.6DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability127D.3.7Error codes127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130	D 3	Code ungrade requirements	115
D.3.1.1Data Over Cable System PKCS#7 signed data117D.3.1.1Code signing keys117D.3.1.2Code Verification Certificate Format118D.3.1.3Certificate revocation120D.3.1.2Signed content120D.3.2Code file access controls120D.3.2Code file access controls120D.3.2Code file access controls120D.3.2Cable modem code upgrade initialization121D.3.3Cable modem code upgrade initialization121D.3.3.1Manufacturer initialization121D.3.3.2Network initialization122D.3.3.2Processing the configuration file CVC123D.3.3.2Processing the SNMP CVC123D.3.4Code signing requirements124D.3.4.1Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements124D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.5Code verification steps125D.3.5Code verification steps125D.3.5Code verification steps125D.3.6DOCSIS I. 0 interoperability127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130			
D.3.1.1.1Code signing keys117D.3.1.2Code Verification Certificate Format118D.3.1.2Signed content120D.3.2Code file access controls120D.3.2Code file access controls120D.3.2.1Subject organization names120D.3.2.2Time varying controls121D.3.3Cable modem code upgrade initialization121D.3.3Cable modem code upgrade initialization121D.3.3.2Network initialization121D.3.3.2Processing the configuration file CVC123D.3.3.2.1Processing the configuration file CVC123D.3.4Code signing requirements124D.3.4.1Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements124D.3.4.2Manufacturing requirements125D.3.5Code verification steps125D.3.6DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130			
D.3.1.1.3Certificate revocation120D.3.1.2Signed content120D.3.2Code file access controls120D.3.2.1Subject organization names120D.3.2.2Time varying controls121D.3.3Cable modem code upgrade initialization121D.3.3.1Manufacturer initialization121D.3.3.2Network initialization121D.3.3.3.1Manufacturer initialization121D.3.3.2Processing the configuration file CVC123D.3.3.2.1Processing the configuration file CVC123D.3.3.2.2Processing the SNMP CVC123D.3.4Code signing requirements.124D.3.4.1Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements124D.3.4.2Manufacturing requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.5Code verification steps125D.3.5Code verification steps125D.3.6DOCSIS I.0 interoperability127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130	D.3.1.		
D.3.1.2Signed content120D.3.2Code file access controls120D.3.2.1Subject organization names120D.3.2.2Time varying controls121D.3.3Cable modem code upgrade initialization121D.3.3.1Manufacturer initialization121D.3.2.2Network initialization122D.3.3.1Manufacturer initialization121D.3.2.2Processing the configuration file CVC123D.3.3.2.1Processing the configuration file CVC123D.3.4Code signing requirements124D.3.4.1Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements124D.3.4.2Manufacturing requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.5Code verification steps125D.3.5.1Cable Modem Code verification steps125D.3.6DOCSIS I.0 interoperability127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130	D.3.1.	.1.2 Code Verification Certificate Format	118
D.3.2Code file access controls120D.3.2.1Subject organization names120D.3.2.2Time varying controls121D.3.3Cable modem code upgrade initialization121D.3.3.1Manufacturer initialization121D.3.3.2Network initialization122D.3.3.2.1Processing the configuration file CVC123D.3.3.2.2Processing the configuration file CVC123D.3.4Code signing requirements124D.3.4.1Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements124D.3.4.2Manufacturing requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.5Code verification requirements125D.3.5Code verification steps125D.3.6DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130			
D.3.2.1Subject organization names120D.3.2.2Time varying controls121D.3.3Cable modem code upgrade initialization121D.3.3Manufacturer initialization121D.3.3.1Manufacturer initialization121D.3.3.2Network initialization122D.3.3.2.1Processing the configuration file CVC123D.3.3.2.2Processing the SNMP CVC123D.3.4Code signing requirements124D.3.4.1Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements124D.3.4.2Manufacturing requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.5Code verification requirements125D.3.6DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130		•	
D.3.2.2Time varying controls121D.3.3Cable modem code upgrade initialization121D.3.3.1Manufacturer initialization121D.3.3.2Network initialization122D.3.3.2Processing the configuration file CVC123D.3.3.2.2Processing the SNMP CVC123D.3.4Code signing requirements124D.3.4.1Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements124D.3.4.2Manufacturing requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.5Code verification requirements125D.3.6DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130			
D.3.3Cable modem code upgrade initialization121D.3.3.1Manufacturer initialization121D.3.3.2Network initialization122D.3.3.2.1Processing the configuration file CVC123D.3.3.2.2Processing the SNMP CVC123D.3.4Code signing requirements124D.3.4.1Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements124D.3.4.2Manufacturing requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.4.5Code verification steps125D.3.5Code verification steps125D.3.6DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130			
D.3.3.1Manufacturer initialization121D.3.3.2Network initialization122D.3.3.2.1Processing the configuration file CVC123D.3.3.2.2Processing the SNMP CVC123D.3.4Code signing requirements124D.3.4.1Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements124D.3.4.2Manufacturing requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.5Code verification requirements125D.3.5.1Cable Modem Code verification steps125D.3.6DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability127D.3.7Error codes127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130			
D.3.3.2Network initialization122D.3.3.2.1Processing the configuration file CVC123D.3.3.2.2Processing the SNMP CVC123D.3.4Code signing requirements124D.3.4.1Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements124D.3.4.2Manufacturing requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.5Code verification requirements125D.3.5Code verification steps125D.3.6DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability127D.3.7Error codes127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130			
D.3.3.2.1Processing the configuration file CVC.123D.3.3.2.2Processing the SNMP CVC123D.3.4Code signing requirements124D.3.4.1Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements124D.3.4.2Manufacturing requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.5Code verification requirements125D.3.6DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability127D.3.7Error codes127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130			
D.3.3.2.2Processing the SNMP CVC123D.3.4Code signing requirements124D.3.4.1Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements124D.3.4.2Manufacturing requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.5.1Code verification requirements125D.3.6DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130			
D.3.4Code signing requirements124D.3.4.1Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements124D.3.4.2Manufacturing requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.5Code verification requirements125D.3.5.1Cable Modem Code verification steps125D.3.6DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability127D.3.7Error codes127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130			
D.3.4.2Manufacturing requirements125D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.5Code verification requirements125D.3.5.1Cable Modem Code verification steps125D.3.6DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability127D.3.7Error codes127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130	D.3.4		
D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.5Code verification requirements125D.3.5.1Cable Modem Code verification steps125D.3.6DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability127D.3.7Error codes127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130	D.3.4	.1 Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements	
D.3.4.3MSO requirements125D.3.5Code verification requirements125D.3.5.1Cable Modem Code verification steps125D.3.6DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability127D.3.7Error codes127D.4Security considerations (informative)128Annex E (informative):Upgrading from BPI to BPI+130E.1Hybrid cable modem with BPI+130E.2Upgrading procedure130	D.3.4	.2 Manufacturing requirements	125
D.3.5.1       Cable Modem Code verification steps       125         D.3.6       DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability       127         D.3.7       Error codes       127         D.4       Security considerations (informative)       128         Annex E (informative):       Upgrading from BPI to BPI+       130         E.1       Hybrid cable modem with BPI+       130         E.2       Upgrading procedure       130		.3 MSO requirements	
D.3.6       DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability       127         D.3.7       Error codes       127         D.4       Security considerations (informative)       128         Annex E (informative):       Upgrading from BPI to BPI+       130         E.1       Hybrid cable modem with BPI+       130         E.2       Upgrading procedure       130		1	
D.3.7       Error codes       127         D.4       Security considerations (informative)       128         Annex E (informative):       Upgrading from BPI to BPI+       130         E.1       Hybrid cable modem with BPI+       130         E.2       Upgrading procedure       130		•	
D.4       Security considerations (informative)       128         Annex E (informative):       Upgrading from BPI to BPI+       130         E.1       Hybrid cable modem with BPI+       130         E.2       Upgrading procedure       130			
Annex E (informative):       Upgrading from BPI to BPI+			
E.1    Hybrid cable modem with BPI+	D.4	Security considerations (informative)	
E.2 Upgrading procedure	Anne	ex E (informative): Upgrading from BPI to BPI+	130
	E.1	Hybrid cable modem with BPI+	
History	E.2	Upgrading procedure	130
	Histo	۶ry	131

7

# Intellectual Property Rights

IPRs essential or potentially essential to the present document may have been declared to ETSI. The information pertaining to these essential IPRs, if any, is publicly available for **ETSI members and non-members**, and can be found in ETSI SR 000 314: "Intellectual Property Rights (IPRs); Essential, or potentially Essential, IPRs notified to ETSI in respect of ETSI standards", which is available from the ETSI Secretariat. Latest updates are available on the ETSI Web server (http://webapp.etsi.org/IPR/home.asp).

8

Pursuant to the ETSI IPR Policy, no investigation, including IPR searches, has been carried out by ETSI. No guarantee can be given as to the existence of other IPRs not referenced in ETSI SR 000 314 (or the updates on the ETSI Web server) which are, or may be, or may become, essential to the present document.

# Foreword

This ETSI Standard (ES) has been produced by ETSI Technical Committee Access and Terminals (AT), and is now submitted for the ETSI standards Membership Approval Procedure.

NOTE: An earlier version of the present document was produced by JTC Broadcast.

The present document is part 3 of a multi-part deliverable covering Data Over Cable Systems, as identified below:

- Part 1: "General";
- Part 2: "Radio Frequency Interface Specification";
- Part 3: "Baseline Privacy Plus Interface Specification".

# 1 Scope

The present document, namely the BPI+ specification [3] extended to allow certificates designated Euro-DOCSIS, describes MAC layer security services for Data Over Cable Systems (DOCS) CMTS.

The source material was the DOCSIS<sup>TM</sup> "Data Over Cable Services Interface Specifications, Baseline Privacy Plus Interface Specification Interim 09 08/30/02", for which the latest published version can be found at <u>www.cablemodem.com</u>.

CM communications. BPI+ security goals are twofold:

- provide cable modem users with data privacy across the cable network; and
- provide MSOs with service protection; i.e. prevent unauthorized users from gaining access to the network's RF MAC services.

BPI+ provides a level of data privacy across the shared medium cable network equal to or better than that provided by dedicated line network access services (analog modems or digital subscriber lines).

The protected RF MAC data communications services fall into three categories:

- best-effort, high-speed, IP data services;
- QoS (e.g. constant bit rate) data services; and
- IP multicast group services.

The earlier BPI specification [4] had "weak" service protection because the underlying key management protocol did not authenticate CMs. BPI+ strengthens this service protection by adding digital-certificate based CM authentication to its key exchange protocol.

# 1.1 Requierements

Throughout the present document, the words that are used to define the significance of particular requirements are capitalized. These words are:

- **MUST:** This word or the adjective "REQUIRED" means that the item is an absolute requirement of the present document.
- MUST NOT: This phrase means that the item is an absolute prohibition of the present document.
- **SHOULD:** This word or the adjective "RECOMMENDED" means that there may exist valid reasons in particular circumstances to ignore this item, but the full implications should be understood and the case carefully weighed before choosing a different course.
- **SHOULD NOT:** This phrase means that there may exist valid reasons in particular circumstances when the listed behaviour is acceptable or even useful, but the full implications should be understood and the case carefully weighed before implementing any behaviour described with this label.
- **MAY:** This word or the adjective "OPTIONAL" means that this item is truly optional. One vendor may choose to include the item because a particular marketplace requires it or because it enhances the product, for example; another vendor may omit the same item.

9

#### 2 References

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

References are either specific (identified by date of publication and/or edition number or version number) or ٠ non-specific.

- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply. •
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies.

Referenced documents which are not found to be publicly available in the expected location might be found at http://docbox.etsi.org/Reference.

[1]	ETSI ES 201 488-1: "Access and Terminals (AT); Data Over Cable Systems Part 1: General".
[2]	ETSI ES 201 488-2: "Access and Terminals (AT); Data Over Cable Systems Part 2: Radio Frequency Interface Specification".
[3]	ANSI/SCTE 23-2 (2002): "Data Over Cable Systems 1.1 Baseline Privacy Plus Interface Specification".
[4]	ANSI/SCTE 22-2 (2002): "Data Over Cable Service Interface Specifications Baseline Privacy Interface Specification (DOCSIS 1.0 BPI), xxx, 2002".
[5]	CableLabs: "Data Over Cable Interface Specifications, Cable Modem Termination System Network Side Interface Specification, SP-CMTS-NSII01-960702".
[6]	CableLabs: "Data Over Cable Service Interface Specifications, Cable Modem to Customer Premise Equipment Interface Specification, SP-CMCI-I07-020301".
[7]	ANSI/SCTE 23-3 (2003): "Data Over Cable Systems, Operations Support System Interface Specification 1.1 (DSS-02-06)".
[8]	FIPS PUB 46-3 (1999): "Data Encryption Standard (DES)".
[9]	FIPS PUB 74 (1981): "Guidelines for Implementing and Using the NBS Data Encryption Standard".
[10]	FIPS PUB 81 (1980): "DES Modes of Operation".
[11]	FIPS PUB 140-2 (2001): "Security Requirements for Cryptographic Modules".
[12]	FIPS PUB 180-1 (1995): "Secure Hash Standard (SHS)".
[13]	FIPS PUB 186-2 (2000): "Digital Signature Standard (DSS)".
[14]	IETF RFC 1750 (1994): "Randomness Recommendations for Security", D. Eastlake, S. Crocker, J. Schiller.
[15]	IETF RFC 2104 (1997): "HMAC: Keyed-Hashing for Message Authentication", H. Krawczyk, M. Bellare, R. Canetti.
[16]	IETF RFC 2202 (1997): "Test Cases for HMAC-MD5 and HMAC-SHA-1", P. Cheng, R. Glenn.
[17]	IETF RFC 2459 (1999): "Internet X.509 Public Key Infrastructure Certificate and CRL Profile", R. Housley, W. Ford, W. Polk, D. Solo.
[18]	RSA Laboratories: "The Public-Key Cryptography Standards", RSA Data Security, Inc., Redwood City, CA, <u>http://www.rsasecurity.com/rsalabs/pkcs/</u>
[19]	RSA Laboratories (1993): "PKCS #1: RSA Encryption Standard", Version 1.5, <u>http://www.rsasecurity.com/rsalabs/pkcs/</u>

10

[20] RSA Laboratories (1993): "Some Examples of the PKCS Standards", RSA Data Security, Inc., Redwood City, CA, <u>http://www.rsasecurity.com/rsalabs/pkcs/</u>

11

- [21] RSA Laboratories (1998): "PKCS #1 v2.0: RSA Cryptography Standard", http://www.rsasecurity.com/rsalabs/pkcs/
- [22] ITU-T Recommendation X.509 (2000): "Information technology Open Systems Interconnection -The Directory: Public-key and attribute certificate frameworks".
- [23] IEEE Std 802 (1990): "IEEE Standards for Local and Metropolitan Area Networks: Overview and Architecture".
- [24] RSA Laboratories: "PKCS #7: Cryptographic Message Syntax Standard", An RSA Laboratories Technical Note, Version 1.5, Revised November 1, 1993, http://www.rsasecurity.com/rsalabs/pkcs/
- [25] "Applied Cryptography", Second Edition, B. Schneier, J. Wiley, New York, 1996.
- [26] SET (1997): "SET Secure Electronic Transaction Specification; Book 2: Programmer's Guide", Version 1.0.
- [27] IETF RFC 2865: "Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS)".
- [28] ISO 3166 (all parts): "Codes for the representation of names of countries and their subdivisions".
- [29] ISO/IEC 8859-1: "Information technology 8-bit single-byte coded graphic character sets -Part 1: Latin alphabet No. 1".
- [30] ANSI/SCTE 79-2 (2002): "Data-Over-Cable System Operational Support System Interface Specification V.2.0".

# 3 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document, the following abbreviations apply:

Baseline Privacy Interface Plus
Baseline Privacy Key Management
Cipher Block Chaining
Cable Modem
Cable Modem to Customer Interface
Cable Modem Termination System
Certificate Revocation List
Code Verification Certificate
Code Verification Key
Code Verification Signature
Destination Addresses
US Data Encryption Standard
Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
Data over cable system Root Key
Encrypt-Decrypt-Encrypt
Extended Header
Greenwich Mean Time
Hybrid Fibre/Coax
Keyed-Hashing for Message Authentication
Internet Protocol
Key Encryption Key
Least Significant Bit
Mask-Generating Function
Network-Side Interface
Quality of Service
Remote Authentication Dial In User Service
RSA Laboratories

SA	Service Association
SAID	Security Association IDentifier
SET	Secure Electronic Transaction
SHA-1	Secure Hash Algorithm
SID	Service Unidentified
TEK	Traffic Encryption Keys
TFTP	Trivial File Transfer Protocol

# 4 Purpose

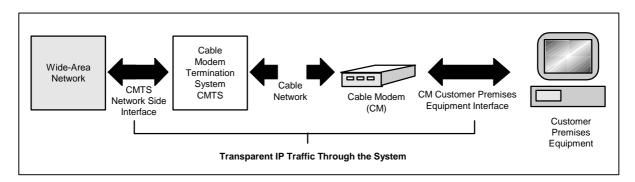
- 4.1 Void
- 4.2 Background

### 4.2.1 Service Goals

Cable operators are interested in deploying high-speed packet-based communications systems on cable television systems that are capable of supporting a wide variety of services. Services under consideration by cable operators include high-speed Internet access, packet telephony service, video conferencing service, T1/frame relay equivalent service and many others. To this end, a series of interface specifications that will permit the early definition, design, development and deployment of Data Over Cable systems on a uniform, consistent, open, non-proprietary, multi-vendor interoperable basis.

12

The intended service will allow transparent bi-directional transfer of Internet Protocol (IP) traffic, between the cable system headend and customer locations, over an all-coaxial or Hybrid Fibre/Coax (HFC) cable television network. This is shown in simplified form in figure 4.1.



#### Figure 4.1: Transparent IP traffic through the Data Over Cable system

The transmission path over the cable system is realized at the headend by a CMTS, and at each customer location by a CM. At the headend (or hub), the interface to the Data Over Cable system is called the Cable Modem Termination System - Network-Side Interface (CMTS-NSI). At the customer locations, the interface is called the Cable-Modem-to-Customer-premise-equipment Interface (CMCI). The intent is for the cable operators to transparently transfer IP traffic between these interfaces, including but not limited to datagrams, DHCP, ICMP, and IP Group addressing (broadcast and multicast).

### 4.2.2 Statement of compatibility

The present document specifies an interface, commonly referred to as BPI+, which is an extension of the interface specified in [4], commonly referred to as BPI. These extensions are entirely backwards and forwards compatible with the previous specification. BPI+ devices will interoperate in networks with CMs or CMTSs implementing BPI, and vice versa.

Refer to annex C for further compatibility information.

# 5 Baseline privacy plus overview

Baseline Privacy Plus (BPI+) provides cable modem users with data privacy across the cable network. It does this by encrypting traffic flows between CM and CMTS.

13

In addition, BPI+ provides cable operators with strong protection from theft of service. The protected Data Over Cable System MAC data communications services fall into three categories:

- best-effort, high-speed, IP data services;
- QoS (e.g. constant bit rate) data services; and
- IP multicast group services.

Under BPI+, the CMTS protects against unauthorized access to these data transport services by enforcing encryption of the associated traffic flows across the cable network. BPI+ employs an authenticated client/server key management protocol in which the CMTS, the server, controls distribution of keying material to client CMs.

The original BPI specification had "weak" service protection because the underlying key management protocol did not authenticate CMs. BPI+ strengthens this service protection by adding digital-certificate based CM authentication to its key management protocol.

# 5.1 Architectural overview

Baseline Privacy Plus has two component protocols:

- An encapsulation protocol for encrypting packet data across the cable network. This protocol defines:
  - 1) the frame format for carrying encrypted packet data within Data Over Cable System MAC frames;
  - 2) a set of supported *cryptographic suites*, i.e. pairings of data encryption and authentication algorithms; and
  - 3) the rules for applying those algorithms to a Data Over Cable System MAC frame's packet data.
- A key management protocol (Baseline Privacy Key Management, or "BPKM") providing the secure distribution of keying data from CMTS to CMs. Through this key management protocol, CM and CMTS synchronize keying data; in addition, the CMTS uses the protocol to enforce conditional access to network services.

#### 5.1.1 Packet data encryption

BPI+ encryption services are defined as a set of extended services within the Data Over Cable System MAC sublayer. Packet Header information specific to BPI+ is placed in a Baseline Privacy Extended Header element within the MAC Extended Header.

At the time of the present document's release, BPI+ supports a single packet date encryption algorithm: the Cipher Block Chaining (CBC) mode of the US Data Encryption Standard (DES) algorithm [8], [10]. BPI+ does not pair DES CBC with any packet data authentication algorithm. Additional data encryption algorithms may be supported in future enhancements to the BPI+ protocol specification, and these algorithms may be paired with data authentication algorithms.

BPI+ encrypts a Data Over Cable System MAC Frame's packet data; the Data Over Cable System MAC Frame's Header is not encrypted. Data Over Cable System MAC management messages MUST be sent in the clear to facilitate registration, ranging, and normal operation of the Data Over Cable System MAC sublayer.

NOTE: The Data Over Cable System MAC headers of Packet Data PDUs and non-BPI+ Data Over Cable System MAC management messages MAY be encrypted when part of a fragmented concatenated packet [2].

Clause 5 specifies the format of Data Over Cable System MAC Frames carrying encrypted packet data payloads.

### 5.1.2 Key management protocol

CMs use the Baseline Privacy Key Management protocol to obtain authorization and traffic keying material from the CMTS, and to support periodic reauthorization and key refresh. The key management protocol uses X.509 digital certificates [22], [18], [19], [20], [21] (a public-key encryption algorithm) and two-key triple DES to secure key exchanges between CM and CMTS.

14

The Baseline Privacy Key Management protocol adheres to a client/server model, where the CM, a BPKM "client", requests keying material, and the CMTS, a BPKM "server", responds to those requests, ensuring individual CM clients only receive keying material they are authorized for. The BPKM protocol uses Data Over Cable System MAC management messaging.

BPI+ uses public-key cryptography to establish a shared secret (i.e. an Authorization Key) between CM and CMTS. The shared secret is then used to secure subsequent BPKM exchanges of traffic encryption keys. This two-tiered mechanism for key distribution permits refreshing of traffic encryption keys without incurring the overhead of computation-intensive public-key operations.

A CMTS authenticates a client CM during the initial authorization exchange. Each CM carries a unique X.509 [22] digital certificate issued by the CM's manufacturer. The digital certificate contains the CM's Public Key along with other identifying information; i.e. CM MAC address, manufacturer ID and serial number. When requesting an Authorization Key, a CM presents its digital certificate to a CMTS. The CMTS verifies the digital certificate, and then uses the verified Public Key to encrypt an Authorization Key, which the CMTS then sends back to the requesting CM.

The CMTS associates a cable modem's authenticated identity to a paying subscriber, and hence to the data services that subscriber is authorized to access. Thus, with the Authorization Key exchange, the CMTS establishes an authenticated identity of a client CM, and the services (i.e. specific traffic encryption keys) the CM is authorized to access.

Since the CMTS authenticates CMs, it can protect against an attacker employing a *cloned* modem, masquerading as a legitimate subscriber's modem. The use of the X.509 [22] certificates prevents cloned modems from passing fake credentials onto a CMTS.

CMs MUST have factory-installed RSA private/public key pairs or provide an internal algorithm to generate such key pairs dynamically. If a CM relies on an internal algorithm to generate its RSA key pair, the CM MUST generate the key pair prior to its first Baseline Privacy initialization, described in clause 5.2.1. CMs with factory-installed RSA key pairs MUST also have factory-installed X.509 [22] certificates. Cable modems that rely on internal algorithms to generate an RSA key pair MUST support a mechanism for installing a manufacturer-issued X.509 [22] certificate following key generation.

The BPKM protocol is defined in detail in clause 7.

### 5.1.3 BPI+ security associations

A BPI+ Security Association (SA) is the set of security information a CMTS and one or more of its client CMs share in order to support secure communications across the cable network. BPI+ defines three types of Security Associations: *Primary, Static,* and *Dynamic.* A Primary Security Association is tied to a single CM, and is established when that CM completes Data Over Cable System MAC registration. Static Security Associations are provisioned within the CMTS. Dynamic Security Associations are established and eliminated, on the fly, in response to the initiation and termination of specific (downstream) traffic flows. Both Static and Dynamic SAs can by shared by multiple CMs.

A Security Association's shared information includes traffic encryption keys and CBC initialization vectors. In order to support, in future BPI+ enhancements, alternative data encryption and data authentication algorithms, BPI+ Security Association parameters include a cryptographic suite identifier, indicating a the particular pairing of packet data encryption and packet data authentication algorithms employed by the security association. At the time of release of the present document, 56-bit DES and 40-bit DES are the only packet data encryption algorithms supported, and neither are paired with a packet data authentication algorithm.

NOTE: BPI+ encrypts a Packet PDU's Ethernet/802.3 CRC. While this provides some degree of data authentication, it does not provide cryptographically secure data authentication.

BPI+ identifies Security Associations with a 14-bit Security Association Identifier (SAID).

Each (BPI+ enabled) CM establishes an exclusive Primary Security Association with its CMTS. All of a CM's upstream traffic MUST be encrypted under the CM's exclusive, Primary Security Association. The SAID corresponding to a CM's Primary SA MUST be equal to the CM's Primary Data Over Cable System 1.1 Service ID (SID) [3]. On the other hand, while typically all downstream unicast traffic directed at CPE device(s) behind the CM, are encrypted under the CM's exclusive Primary Security Association, selected downstream unicast traffic flows can be encrypted under Static or Dynamic SAs. That is, downstream traffic MAY be encrypted under any of the three types of SAs. A downstream IP multicast data packet, however, is typically intended for multiple CMs and hence is more likely to be encrypted under Static or Dynamic SAs, which multiple CMs can access, as opposed to a Primary SA, which is restricted to a single CM.

15

Using the BPKM protocol, a CM requests from its CMTS a SA's keying material. The CMTS ensures that each client CM only has access to the Security Associations it is authorized to access.

A SA's keying material (e.g. DES key and CBC Initialization Vector) has a limited lifetime. When the CMTS delivers SA keying material to a CM, it also provides the CM with that material's remaining lifetime. It is the responsibility of the CM to request new keying material from the CMTS before the set of keying material that the CM currently holds expires at the CMTS. The BPKM protocol specifies how CM and CMTS maintain key synchronization.

### 5.1.4 QoS SIDs and BPI+ SAIDs

The BPI+ Extended Header Element in downstream Data Over Cable System MAC frames contains the BPI+ SAID under which the downstream frame is encrypted. If the downstream frame is a unicast packet addressed to a CPE device behind a particular CM, the frame will typically be encrypted under the CM's Primary SA, in which case the SAID will be equal to the target CM's Primary SID. If the downstream frame is a multicast packet intended for receipt by multiple CMs, the extended header element will contain the Static or Dynamic SAID mapped to that multicast group. The SAID (Primary, Static or Dynamic), in combination with other data fields in the downstream extended header element, identifies to a receiving modem the particular set of keying material required to decrypt the Data Over Cable System MAC frame's encrypted Packet Data field.

Since all of a CM's upstream traffic is encrypted under its unique Primary SA, upstream Data Over Cable System MAC Frames, unlike downstream Data Over Cable System MAC Frames, need not carry a BPI+ SAID in their extended headers; instead, the Baseline Privacy EH element MAY contain any valid QoS SID assigned to the CM.

Extended Header Elements contain a QoS SID rather than a BPI+ Primary SAID, which can be inferred from the QoS SID.

# 5.2 Operational overview

### 5.2.1 Cable modem initialization

ES 201 488-2 [2] divides cable modem initialization into the following sequence of tasks:

- scan for downstream channel and establish synchronization with the CMTS;
- obtain transmit parameters;
- perform ranging;
- establish IP connectivity (DHCP);
- establish time of day;
- transfer operational parameters (download parameter file via TFTP);
- CMTS Registration.

Baseline Privacy establishment follows CMTS registration.

If a CM is to run Baseline Privacy, the Privacy Enable setting (type 29) in the Data Over Cable System 1.1 style configuration file MUST be explicitly/implicitly set to enable, regardless of the presence of the Baseline Privacy Configuration Settings (type 17). In other words, Baseline Privacy Configuration Settings do not need to be present in the configuration file in order to run Baseline Privacy. These additional configuration settings are defined in annex A.

Upon completing CMTS registration, the CMTS will have assigned one or more static Service IDs (SIDs) to the registering CM that matches the CM's static class-of-service provisioning. The first static SID assigned during the registration process is the Primary SID, and this SID will also serve as the CM's BPI+ Primary SAID. If a CM is configured to run Baseline Privacy, CMTS registration is immediately followed by initialization of the CM's Baseline Privacy security functions.

Baseline Privacy initialization begins with the CM sending the CMTS an Authorization Request, containing:

- data identifying the CM (e.g. MAC address);
- the CM's RSA public key;
- an X.509 certificate verifying the binding between the CM's identifying data and the CM's public key;
- a list of the CM's security capabilities (i.e. the particular pairings of encryption and authentication algorithms the CM supports); and
- the CM's Primary SAID (i.e. the Primary SID).

If the CMTS determines the requesting CM is authorized for the Authorization Request's Primary SAID, the CMTS responds with an Authorization Reply containing an Authorization Key, from which CM and CMTS derive the keys needed to secure a CM's subsequent requests for traffic encryption keys and the CMTS's responses to these requests. The CMTS encrypts the Authorization Key with the receiving cable modem's public key.

The Authorization Reply also contains a list of security association descriptors, identifying the primary and static SAs the requesting CM is authorized to access. Each SA descriptor consists of a collection of SA parameters, including the SA's SAID, type and cryptographic. The list contains at least one entry: a descriptor describing the CM's primary security association. Additional entries are optional, and would describe any static SAs the CM was provisioned to access.

After successfully completing authentication and authorization with the CMTS, the cable modem sends key requests to the CMTS, requesting traffic encryption keys to use with each of its SAIDs. A CM's traffic key requests are authenticated using a keyed hash (the HMAC algorithm [15]); the Message Authentication Key is derived from the Authorization Key obtained during the earlier authorization exchange. The CMTS responds with key replies, containing the Traffic Encryption Keys (TEKs); TEKs are triple DES encrypted with a key encryption key derived from the Authorization Key. Like the Key Requests, Key Replies are authenticated with a keyed hash, where the Message Authentication Key is derived from the Authorization Key.

#### 5.2.2 Cable modem key update mechanism

The traffic encryption keys which the CMTS provides to client CMs have a limited lifetime. The CMTS delivers a key's remaining lifetime, along with the key value, in the key replies it sends to its client CMs. The CMTS controls which keys are current by flushing expired keys and generating new keys. It is the responsibility of individual cable modems to insure the keys they are using match those the CMTS is using. Cable modems do this by tracking when a particular SAID's key is scheduled to expire and issuing a new key request for the latest key prior to that expiration time.

In addition, cable modems are required to periodically reauthorize with the CMTS; as is the case with Traffic Encryption Keys, an Authorization Key has a finite lifetime which the CMTS provides the CM along with the key value. It is the responsibility of each cable modem to reauthorize and obtain a fresh Authorization Key (and an up-to-date list of SA descriptors) before the CMTS expires the CM's current Authorization Key.

Baseline Privacy initialization and key update is implemented within the Baseline Privacy Key Management protocol, defined in detail in clause 7.

# 6 Data Over Cable system MAC frame formats

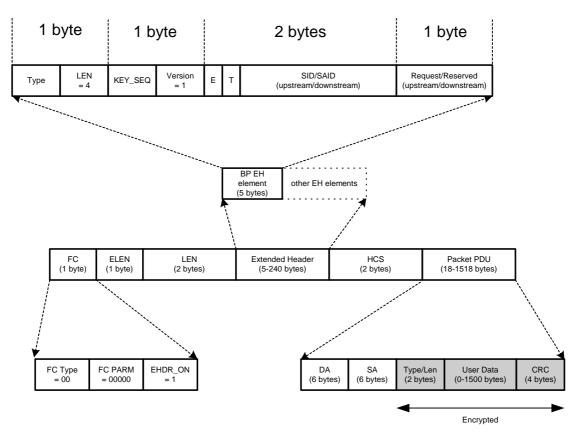
When operating with BPI+ enabled, CM and CMTS encrypt the Data PDU regions of particular Data Over Cable System MAC Frames they transmit onto the cable network. BPI+ encryption applies to two specific types of Data Over Cable System MAC frames:

- Variable-length Packet Data PDU MAC Frames.
- Fragmentation MAC Frames.

In each of the two cases, a Baseline Privacy Extended Header Element in the Data Over Cable System MAC Header identifies the Security Association and accompanying keying material used to encrypt the Data PDU.

# 6.1 Variable-length packet data PDU MAC frame format

Figure 6.1 depicts the format of a Data Over Cable System variable-length Packet Data PDU with a Privacy Extended Header (EH) Element and encrypted Packet PDU payload.



# Figure 6.1: Format of Data Over Cable system variable-length packet data PDU with privacy EH element

The first 12 octets of the Packet PDU, containing the Ethernet/802.3 Destination and Source Addresses (DA/SA), are not encrypted. Transmitting a frame's destination and source addressing in the clear provides vendors with greater flexibility in how they integrate encryption/decryption with Data Over Cable System MAC functionality; e.g. vendors have freedom to choose between filtering on DA/SA or SID first. The Packet PDU's Ethernet/802.3 CRC is encrypted.

The CMTS includes the Baseline Privacy EH element in all downstream Packet Data PDUs it encrypts under Baseline Privacy Plus. Similarly, a CM includes the Baseline Privacy EH element in all upstream Packet Data PDUs it encrypts under Baseline Privacy Plus. If there are multiple Extended Header elements present in the Data Over Cable System MAC Header, the Baseline Privacy Extended Header element MUST be the first.

The Privacy Extended Header element employs two EH element type values, BPI\_UP and BPI\_DOWN, for use with upstream and downstream Packet Data PDUs, respectively. ES 201 488-2 [2] defines the specific EH element type values assigned to BPI\_UP and BPI\_DOWN.

18

The high-order 4 bits of a BPI+ Extended Header element's value field contains a key sequence number, KEY\_SEQ. Recall that the keying material associated with a BPI+ SAID has a limited lifetime, and the CMTS periodically refreshes a SAID's keying material. The CMTS manages a 4-bit key sequence number independently for each SAID and distributes this key sequence number along with the SAID's keying material to client CMs. The CMTS increments the key sequence number with each new generation of keying material. The Privacy EH element includes this sequence number, along with the SAID, to identify the specific generation of that SAID's keying material being used to encrypt the attached Packet Data PDU. Being a 4-bit quantity, the sequence number wraps around to 0 when it reaches 15.

Comparing a received frame's key sequence number with what it believes to be the "current" key sequence number, a CM or CMTS can easily recognize a loss of key synchronization with its peer. A CM MUST maintain the two most recent generations of keying material for each BPI+ SAID. Keeping on-hand the two most recent key generations is necessary for maintaining uninterrupted service during a SAID's key transition.

The 4 bits following KEY\_SEQ contain a protocol version number. This protocol version number is set to 1 in Data Over Cable System Variable-length Packet Data PDU MAC headers.

The next two bytes contain the 2 bits of encryption status and the 14-bit SID/SAID (SID for upstream frames, SAID for downstream frames). The ENABLE encryption status bit indicates whether encryption is enabled or disabled for that PDU. If the ENABLE bit is 0, the Packet Data PDU is not encrypted and the Baseline Privacy EH element MUST be ignored (with the exception of the optional piggybacked bandwidth request - see below). The TOGGLE bit MUST match the state of the Least Significant Bit (LSB) of KEY\_SEQ, the Key Sequence Number.

The Data Over Cable System MAC protocol ES 201 488-2 [2] defines a Request EH element for piggybacking a bandwidth request on a data transmission. Baseline Privacy defines an additional mechanism for piggybacking bandwidth requests: the last byte of the Baseline Privacy upstream EH element (EH element type = BPI\_UP) carries an optional piggybacked bandwidth allocation request. If there is a piggybacked request, the byte represents the number of requested mini-slots. The 14-bit SID within the upstream Baseline Privacy EH element identifies the Service ID the bandwidth request applies to. If there is no piggybacked request within the Baseline Privacy EH element, the request byte is set to zero. A piggybacked request within the baseline privacy EH element MUST be processed regardless of the status of the ENABLE bit.

In downstream packets (extender header element type = BPI\_DOWN) the fourth and final byte is reserved and set to zero.

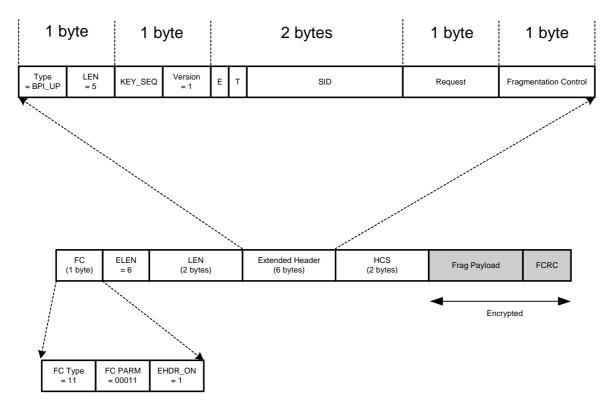
EH_TYPE	EH_LEN	EH_VALUE
BPIUP	4	KEY_SEQ (4 bits), Version (4 bits), SID (2 bytes), Request [piggyback] (1 byte) [CM> CMTS]
See ES 201 488-2 [2]		KEY_SEQ field (4 bits): Key sequence number Version field (4 bits) is defined as: 0x1 SID field is defined as:
		Bit[15]: ENABLE: 1Encryption enabled; 0Encryption Disabled Bit[14]: TOGGLE: 1Odd Key; 0Even Key Bit[13:0]: Service ID. Request field contains the number of mini-slots requested for upstream
		bandwidth.
BPIDOWN	4	KEY_SEQ (4 bits), Version (4 bits), SID (2 bytes), Reserved (1 byte) [CMTS> CM] KEY_SEQ field (4 bits): Key sequence number
See ES 201 488-2 [2]		Version field (4 bits) is defined as: 0x1
		SAID field is defined as: Bit[15]: ENABLE: 1Encryption enabled; 0Encryption Disabled Bit[14]: TOGGLE: 1Odd Key; 0Even Key Bit[13:0]: Security Association ID. Reserved field is set to 0.

Table 6.1: Summary of the contents of the two baseline privacy EH elements

In the case of encrypted Packet Data PDUs transmitted in an upstream data contention interval, the SID in the Baseline Privacy EH element MUST identify the QoS SID; it MUST NOT be set to the Request/Data contention interval's Multicast Service ID.

# 6.2 Fragmentation MAC frame format

In order to support fragmentation of upstream Data Over Cable System MAC frames, Data Over Cable System 1.1 has recast the Baseline Privacy EH element to carry both encryption and fragmentation control fields ES 201 488-2 [2]. When functioning in this dual role, the upstream Baseline Privacy EH element (EH element type BPI\_UP) is extended by one byte, the final byte serving as the fragmentation control field. Figure 6.2 depicts the format of a Data Over Cable System Fragmentation MAC Frame with an encrypted fragmentation payload.



# Figure 6.2: Format of a Data Over Cable system MAC fragmentation frame with an encrypted payload

An FC Type = 11 and FC PARM = 00011 identify a Data Over Cable System MAC frame as a Fragmentation frame. Unlike Packet Data PDU MAC frames, Fragmentation MAC frames have a fixed-size (six-byte) MAC Extended Header containing the 'stretched' Baseline Privacy EH element.

The Fragmentation MAC header is followed by a Fragment Payload and a Fragment CRC. When Baseline Privacy encryption is applied to a Fragmentation MAC frame, the *entire* Fragment Payload is encrypted along with the Fragment CRC. In other words, unlike Baseline Privacy's encryption of Packet Data PDUs, there is no 12-byte offset into the payload before beginning encryption.

NOTE: For non-fragmented frames, the first 12-bytes are left in the clear to allow pre-decryption DA/SA filtering. For fragmented frames, DA/SA filtering cannot occur before packet reassembly; hence, there is no value in supporting the 12-byte encryption offset in Data Over Cable System Fragmentation MAC frames.

The LEN field of the Baseline Privacy EH element in Fragmentation MAC Frames is 5 rather than 4, accounting for the additional 1-byte fragmentation control field. The KEY\_SEQ field, VERSION field, ENABLE and TOGGLE flags, and SID field are what they would be for an upstream Packet Data PDU MAC Frame.

EH_TYPE	EH_LEN	EH_VALUE
BPI_UP	5	KEY_SEQ (4 bits), Version (4 bits), SID (2 bytes), Request [piggyback] (1
		byte), Fragmentation Control (1 byte)
		[CM> CMTS]
See ES 201 488-2 [2]		KEY_SEQ field (4 bits): Key sequence number
		Version field (4 bits) is defined as:
		0x1
		SID field is defined as:
		Bit[15]: ENABLE: 1Encryption enabled; 0Encryption Disabled
		Bit[14]: TOGGLE: 1Odd Key; 0Even Key
		Bit[13:0]: Service ID.
		Request field contains the number of mini-slots requested for upstream
		bandwidth.
		Fragmentation Control field contains fragmentation-specific control information;
		see ES 201 488-2 [2] for details.

Table 6.2: Summary of the contents of a Data Over Cable system fragmentation
MAC frame's baseline privacy EH element

20

The fragmentation operation overrides BPI+ in the sense that the CM must first determine whether or not a packet will be fragmented based on grant size (the number of mini-slots a CMTS grants to a CM in an Upstream Bandwidth Allocation MAP ES 201 488-2 [2]). If the packet is to be fragmented, the BPI+ encryption MUST occur on a fragment by fragment basis, and not over the PDU as a whole; each fragment will have its own fragmentation header and be encrypted separately. If the packet is not to be fragmented, then it MUST be encrypted as a single unit, with a single privacy header.

# 6.3 Requirements on usage of BP extended header element in MAC header

If BPI+ is not enabled on a particular downstream traffic flow (e.g. a CM's unicast traffic or a particular IP multicast group), the BP Extended Header element SHOULD NOT be used.

If BPI+ is not enabled for a CM's unicast traffic, fragmented upstream frames MUST still use the BP Extended Header element, but with the Encryption ENABLE bit turned off (0). This way the BP Extended Header can still be used for piggybacked bandwidth requests according to fragmentation rules described in [3].

If BPI+ is not enabled for a CM's unicast traffic, unfragmented upstream frames MAY use the BP Extended Header element, with the Encryption ENABLE bit turned off, to carry piggybacked bandwidth requests. Alternatively, unfragmented upstream frames' piggybacked bandwidth requests MAY be carried in a REQUEST Extended Header element (EH\_TYPE=1).

For MAC frames consisting of only a MAC header and optional EHDR, Baseline privacy MUST be disabled. A Baseline Privacy EHDR MAY be present on these frames, but the enable bit MUST be cleared to disable privacy.

# 7 Baseline Privacy Key Management (BPKM) protocol

# 7.1 State models

### 7.1.1 Introduction

The BPKM protocol is specified by two separate, but interdependent, state models: an authorization state model (the Authorization state machine) and an operational service key state model (the Traffic Encryption Key, or *TEK* state machine). This clause defines these two state models. The state models are for explanatory purposes only, and should not be construed as constraining an actual implementation.

Cable modem authorization, controlled by the Authorization state machine, is the process of:

- the CMTS authenticating a client CM's identity;
- the CMTS providing the authenticated CM with an Authorization Key, from which a Key Encryption Key (KEK) and message authentication keys are derived;

21

• the CMTS providing the authenticated CM with the identities (i.e. the SAIDs) and properties of primary and static security associations the CM is authorized to obtain keying information for.

The KEK is a two-key triple DES encryption key that the CMTS uses to encrypt the Traffic Encryption Keys (TEKs) it sends to the modem. Traffic encryption keys are used for encrypting user data traffic. CM and CMTS use message authentication keys to authenticate, via a keyed message digest, the key requests and responses they exchange.

After achieving initial authorization, a cable modem periodically seeks re-authorization with the CMTS; reauthorization is also managed by the CM's Authorization state machine. A CM MUST maintain its authorization status with the CMTS in order to be able to refresh aging Traffic Encryption Keys. TEK state machines manage the refreshing of Traffic Encryption Keys.

A cable modem begins authorization by sending an Authentication Information message to its CMTS. The Authentication Information message contains the cable modem manufacturer's X.509 certificate. The Authentication Information message is strictly informative, i.e. the CMTS may choose to ignore it; however it does provide a mechanism for a CMTS to learn the manufacturer certificates of its client CMs.

The cable modem sends an Authorization Request message to its CMTS immediately after sending the Authentication Information message. This is a request for an Authorization Key, as well as for the SAIDs identifying any Static Security Associations the CM is authorized to participate in. The Authorization Request includes:

- the cable modem's manufacturer ID and serial number;
- the cable modem's MAC address;
- the cable modem's public key;
- a manufacturer-issued X.509 certificate binding the cable modem's public key to its other identifying information;
- a description of the cryptographic algorithms the requesting cable modem supports; a CM's cryptographic capabilities is presented to the CMTS as a list of cryptographic suite identifiers, each indicating a particular pairing of packet data encryption and packet data authentication algorithms the CM supports;
- the cable modem's Primary SAID, *which is equal to the CM's Primary SID*. The Primary SID is the first static SID the CMTS assigns to a CM during RF MAC registration.

In response to an Authorization Request message, a CMTS validates the requesting CM's identity, determines the encryption algorithm and protocol support it shares with the CM, activates an Authorization Key for the CM, encrypts it with the cable modem's public key, and sends it back to the CM in an Authorization Reply message. The authorization reply includes:

- an Authorization Key encrypted with the CM's public key;
- a 4-bit key sequence number, used to distinguish between successive generations of Authorization Keys;
- a key lifetime;
- the identities (i.e. the SAIDs) and properties of the single primary and zero or more static security associations the CM is authorized to obtain keying information for.

While the Authorization Reply MAY identify Static SAs in addition to the Primary SA whose SAID matches the requesting CM's best-effort SID, the Authorization Reply MUST NOT identify any Dynamic SAs.

The CMTS, in responding to a CM's Authorization Request, will determine whether the re-questing cable modem, whose identity can be verified via the X.509 digital certificate, is authorized for basic unicast services, and what additional statically provisioned services (i.e. Static SAIDs) the cable modem's user has subscribed for. Note that the protected services a CMTS makes available to a client CM can depend upon the particular cryptographic suites CM and CMTS share support for.

Upon achieving authorization, a CM starts a separate TEK state machine for each of the SAIDs identified in the Authorization Reply message. Each TEK state machine operating within the CM is responsible for managing the keying material associated with its respective SAID. TEK state machines periodically send Key Request messages to the CMTS, requesting a refresh of keying material for their respective SAIDs. A Key Request includes:

- identifying information unique to the cable modem, consisting of the manufacturer ID, serial number, MAC address and RSA Public Key;
- the SAID whose keying material is being requested;
- an HMAC keyed message digest, authenticating the Key Request.

The CMTS responds to a Key Request with a Key Reply message, containing the CMTS's active keying material for a specific SAID. This keying material includes:

- the triple-DES-encrypted traffic encryption key;
- CBC initialization vector;
- a key sequence number;
- a key's remaining lifetime;
- an HMAC keyed message, authenticating the Key Reply.

The Traffic Encryption Key (TEK) in the Key Reply is triple DES (encrypt-decrypt-encrypt or EDE mode) encrypted, using a two-key, triple DES Key Encryption Key (KEK) derived from the Authorization Key.

Note that at all times the CMTS maintains two active sets of keying material per SAID. The lifetimes of the two generations overlap such that each generation becomes active halfway through the life of it predecessor and expires halfway through the life of its successor. A CMTS includes in its Key Replies *both* of a SAID's active generations of keying material.

The Key Reply provides the requesting CM, in addition to the TEK and CBC initialization vector, the remaining lifetime of each of the two sets of keying material. The receiving CM uses these remaining lifetimes to estimate when the CMTS will invalidate a particular TEK, and therefore when to schedule future Key Requests such that the CM requests and receives new keying material before the CMTS expires the keying material the CM currently holds.

The operation of the TEK state machine's Key Request scheduling algorithm, combined with the CMTS's regimen for updating and using a SAID's keying material (see clause 9), insures that the CM will be able to continually exchange encrypted traffic with the CMTS.

A CM MUST periodically refresh its Authorization Key by re-issuing an Authorization Request to the CMTS. Reauthorization is identical to authorization with the exception that the CM does not send Authentication Information messages during reauthorization cycles. Clause 7.1.2's description of the authorization state machine clearly indicates when Authentication Information messages are sent.

To avoid service interruptions during reauthorization, successive generations of the CM's Authorization Keys have overlapping lifetimes. Both CM and CMTS MUST be able to support up to two simultaneously active Authorization Keys during these transition periods. The operation of the Authorization state machine's Authorization Request scheduling algorithm, combined with the CMTS's regimen for updating and using a client CM's Authorization Keys (see clause 9), insures that CMs will be able to refresh TEK keying information without interruption over the course of the CM's reauthorization periods.

A TEK state machine remains active as long as:

• the CM is authorized to operate in the CMTS's security domain; i.e. it has a valid Authorization Key; and

23

• the CM is authorized to participate in that particular Security Association; i.e. CMTS continues to provide fresh keying material during re-key cycles.

The parent Authorization state machine stops *all* of its child TEK state machines when the CM receives from the CMTS an Authorization Reject during a reauthorization cycle. Individual TEK state machines can be started or stopped during a reauthorization cycle if a CM's Static SAID authorizations changed between successive re-authorizations.

Communication between Authorization and TEK state machines occurs through the passing of events and protocol messaging. The Authorization state machine generates events (i.e. Stop, Authorized, Authorization Pending, and Authorization Complete events) that are targeted at its child TEK state machines. TEK state machines do not target events at their parent Authorization state machine. The TEK state machine affects the Authorization state machine indirectly through the messaging a CMTS sends in response to a modem's requests: a CMTS MAY respond to a TEK machine's Key Requests with a failure response (i.e. Authorization Invalid message) that will be handled by the Authorization state machine.

# 7.1.1.1 Preliminary comment on dynamic security associations and dynamic SA mapping

Clause 5 introduced Dynamic SAs and mentioned how a CMTS can establish or eliminate a Dynamic SA in response to the initiation or termination of downstream traffic flows (e.g. a particular IP multicast group's traffic). In order for a CM to run a TEK state machine to obtain a Dynamic Security Association's keying material, the CM needs to know the corresponding SAID value. The CMTS, however, does not volunteer to client CMs the existence of Dynamic SAs; instead, it is the responsibility of CMs to request of the CMTS the mappings of traffic flow identifiers (e.g. an IP multicast address) to dynamic SAIDs.

BPI+ defines a messaging exchange by which a CM learns the mapping of a downstream traffic flow to a Dynamic SA (all upstream traffic is encrypted under a CM's Primary SA). A SA Mapping state machine specifies how cable modems manage the transmission of these mapping request messages. Currently only Data Over Cable System's IP multicast management services utilize this mechanism. In the future, additional services may employ BPI+ Dynamic SAs.

The Authorization state machine controls the establishment and termination of TEK state machines associated with the Primary and any Static SAs; it does not, however, control the establishment and termination of TEK state machines associated with Dynamic SAs. CMs MUST implement the necessary logic to establish and terminate a Dynamic SA's TEK state machine. This interface specification, however, does not specify how CMs should manage their Dynamic SA's TEK state machines.

A full description of the SA Mapping state model is deferred to clause 8.

#### 7.1.1.2 Security capabilities selection

As part of their BPI+ authorization exchange, the CM provides the CMTS with a list of all the cryptographic suites (pairing of data encryption and data authentication algorithms) the CM supports. The CMTS selects from this list a single cryptographic suite to employ with the requesting CM's primary SA. The Authorization Reply the CMTS sends back to the CM includes a primary SA descriptor which, among other things, identifies the cryptographic suite the CMTS selected to use for the CM's primary SA. A CMTS MUST reject the authorization request if it determines that none of the offered cryptographic suites are satisfactory.

The Authorization Reply also contains an optional list of static SA descriptors; each static SA descriptor identifies the cryptographic suite employed within the SA. The selection of a static SA's cryptographic suite is typically made independent of the requesting CM's cryptographic capabilities. A CMTS MAY include in its Authorization Reply static SA descriptors identifying cryptographic suites the requesting CM does not support; if this is the case, the CM MUST NOT start TEK state machines for static SAs whose cryptographic suites the CM does not support.

The above selection framework was incorporated into BPI+ in order to support future enhancements to Data Over Cable System hardware and to the BPI+ protocol. At the time of release of the present document, 56-bit DES and 40-bit DES are the only packet data encryption algorithms supported, and neither are paired with a packet data authentication algorithm.

## 7.1.2 Authorization state machine

The Authorization state machine consists of six states and eight distinct events (including receipt of messages) that can trigger state transitions. The Authorization finite state machine (FSM) is presented below in a graphical format, as a state flow model (see figure 4.1), and in a tabular format, as a state transition matrix (see table 7.1).

24

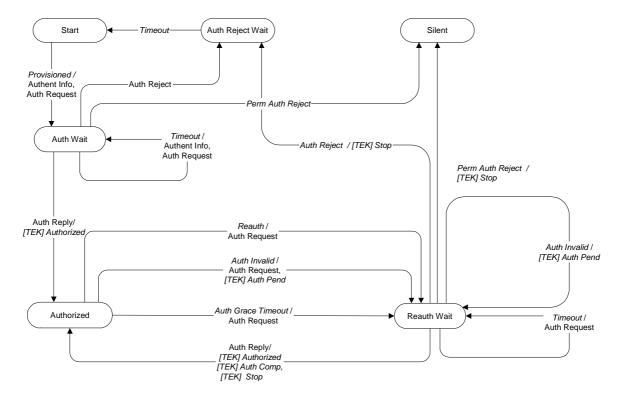
The state flow diagram depicts the protocol messages transmitted and internal events generated for each of the model's state transitions; however, the diagram does not indicate additional internal actions, such as the clearing or starting of timers that accompany the specific state transitions. Accompanying the state transition matrix is a detailed description of the specific actions accompanying each state transition; the state transition matrix MUST be used as the definitive specification of protocol actions associated with each state transition.

The following legend applies to the Authorization State Machine flow diagram in depicted in figure 4.1.

- Ovals are states.
- Events are in *italics*.
- Messages are in normal font.
- State transitions (i.e. the lines between states) are labelled with <what causes the transition>/<messages and events triggered by the transition>. So 'timeout/Auth Request' means that the state received a 'timeout' event and sent an Authorization Request ('Auth Request') message. If there are multiple events or messages before the slash '/' separated by a comma, *any* of them can cause a transition. If there are multiple events or messages listed after the slash, *all* of the specified actions must accompany the transition.

The Authorization state transition matrix presented in table 7.1 lists the six Authorization machine states in the top-most row and the eight Authorization machine events (includes message receipts) in the left-most column. Any cell within the matrix represents a specific combination of state and event, with the next state (the state transitioned to) displayed within the cell. For example, cell 4-B represents the receipt of an Authorization Reply (Auth Reply) message when in the Authorize Wait (Auth Wait) state. Within cell 4-B is the name of the next state, 'Authorized'. Thus, when a CM's Authorization state machine is in the Authorize Wait state and an Authorization Reply message is received, the Authorization state machine will transition to the Authorized state. In conjunction with this state transition, several protocol actions must be taken; these are described in the listing of protocol actions, under the heading 4-B, in clause 7.1.2.5.

A shaded cell within the state transition matrix implies that either the specific event cannot or should not occur within that state, and if the event does occur, the state machine MUST ignore it. For example, if an Authorization Reply message arrives when in the Authorized state, that message should be ignored (cell 4-C). The CM MAY, however, in response to an improper event, log its occurrence, generate an SNMP event, or take some other vendor-defined action. These actions, however, are not specified within the context of the Authorization state machine, which simply ignores improper events.



25

#### Figure 7.1: Authorization state machine flow diagram

State	(A) Start	(B) Auth Wait	(C) Authorized	(D) Reauth Wait	(E) Auth	(F) Silent
Event or Rcvd Message					Reject Wait	
(1) Provisioned	Auth Wait					
(2) Auth Reject		Auth Reject Wait		Auth Reject Wait		
(3) Perm Auth Reject		Silent		Silent		
(4) Auth Reply		Authorized		Authorized		
(5) Timeout		Auth Wait		Reauth Wait	Start	
(6) Auth Grace Timeout			Reauth Wait			
(7) Auth Invalid			Reauth Wait	Reauth Wait		
(8) Reauth			Reauth Wait			

#### 7.1.2.1 States

#### 7.1.2.1.1 Start

This is the initial state of the FSM. No resources are assigned to or used by the FSM in this state- e.g. all timers are off, and no processing is scheduled.

26

#### 7.1.2.1.2 Authorize Wait (Auth Wait)

The CM has received the 'Provisioned' event indicating that it has completed RF MAC registration with the CMTS. In response to receiving the event, the CM has sent both an Authentication Information and an Authorize Request message to the CMTS and is waiting for the reply.

#### 7.1.2.1.3 Authorized

The CM has received an Authorization Reply message which contains a list of valid SAIDs for this CM. At this point, the modem has a valid Authorization Key and SAID list. Transition into this state triggers the creation of one TEK FSM for each of the CM's privacy-enabled SAIDs.

#### 7.1.2.1.4 Reauthorize Wait (Reauth Wait)

The CM has an outstanding re-authorization request. The CM was either about to time out its current authorization or received an indication (an Authorization Invalid message from the CMTS) that its authorization was no longer valid. The CM sent an Authorization Request message to the CMTS and is waiting for a response.

#### 7.1.2.1.5 Authorize Reject Wait (Auth Reject Wait)

The CM received an Authorization Reject message in response to its last Authorization Request. The Authorization Reject's error code indicated the error was not of a permanent nature. In response to receiving this reject message, the CM set a timer and transitioned to the Authorize Reject Wait state. The CM remains in this state until the timer expires.

#### 7.1.2.1.6 Silent

The CM received an Authorization Reject message in response to its last Authorization Request. The Authorization Reject's error code indicated the error was of a permanent nature. This triggers a transition to the Silent state. In the Silent state, the CM MUST NOT pass CPE traffic, but MUST be able to respond to SNMP management requests arriving from across the cable network. CMTS MAY forward any IP traffic without encryption.

#### 7.1.2.2 Messages

Note that the message formats are defined in detail in clause 7.2.

#### 7.1.2.2.1 Authorization Request (Auth Request)

Request an Authorization Key and list of authorized SAIDs. Sent from CM to CMTS.

#### 7.1.2.2.2 Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)

Receive an Authorization Key and list of authorized, static SAIDs. Sent from CMTS to CM. The Authorization Key is encrypted with the CM's public key.

#### 7.1.2.2.3 Authorization Reject (Auth Reject)

Attempt to authorize was rejected. Sent from the CMTS to the CM.

#### 7.1.2.2.4 Authorization Invalid (Auth Invalid)

The CMTS can send an Authorization Invalid message to a client CM as:

• an unsolicited indication; or

• a response to a message received from that CM.

In either case, the Authorization Invalid message instructs the receiving CM to re-authorize with its CMTS.

The CMTS responds to a Key Request with an Authorization Invalid message if:

- 1) the CMTS does not recognize the CM as being authorized (i.e. no valid Authorization Key associated with cable modem); or
- 2) verification of the Key Request's keyed message digest (in HMAC-Digest Attribute) failed.

Note that the Authorization Invalid *event*, referenced in both the state flow diagram and the state transition matrix, signifies either the receipt of an Authorization Invalid message or an internally generated event.

#### 7.1.2.2.5 Authentication Information (Authent Info)

The Authentication Information message contains the cable modem manufacturer's X.509 Certificate. The Authent Info message is strictly an informative message the CM sends to the CMTS; with it, a CMTS MAY dynamically learn the manufacturer certificate of client CMs. Alternatively, a CMTS MAY require out-of-band configuration of its list of manufacturer certificates.

#### 7.1.2.3 Events

#### 7.1.2.3.1 Provisioned

The Authorization state machine generates this event upon entering the Start state if the RF MAC has completed initialization, i.e. CMTS registration. If the RF MAC initialization is not complete, the CM sends a Provisioned event to the Authorization FSM upon completing CMTS registration. The Provisioned event triggers the CM to begin the process of getting its Authorization Key and TEKs.

#### 7.1.2.3.2 Timeout

A retransmission or wait timer timed out. Generally a request is resent.

#### 7.1.2.3.3 Authorization Grace Timeout (Auth Grace Timeout)

The Authorization Grace timer timed out. This timer fires a configurable amount of time (the Authorization Grace Time) before the current authorization is supposed to expire, signalling the CM to re-authorize before its authorization actually expires. The Authorization Grace Time is specified in a configuration setting within the TFTP-downloaded parameter file.

#### 7.1.2.3.4 Reauthorize (Reauth)

CM's set of authorized static SAIDs may have changed. Event generated in response to an SNMP set, [7], meant to trigger a reauthorization cycle.

#### 7.1.2.3.5 Authorization Invalid (Auth Invalid)

This event can be internally generated by the CM when there is a failure authenticating a Key Reply, Key Reject, or TEK Invalid message, or externally generated by the receipt of an Authorization Invalid message, sent from the CMTS to the CM. A CMTS responds to a Key Request with an Authorization Invalid if verification of the request's message authentication code fails. Both cases indicate CMTS and CM have lost Authorization Key synchronization.

A CMTS MAY also send a CM an unsolicited Authorization Invalid message to a CM, forcing an Authorization Invalid event.

#### 7.1.2.3.6 Permanent Authorization Reject (Perm Auth Reject)

The CM receives an Authorization Reject in response to an Authorization Request. The error code in the Authorization Reject indicates the error is of a permanent nature. What is interpreted as a permanent error is subject to administrative control within the CMTS. Authorization Request processing errors that can be interpreted as permanent error conditions include:

- unknown manufacturer (do not have CA certificate of the issuer of the CM Certificate);
- invalid signature on CM certificate;
- ASN.1 parsing failure;
- inconsistencies between data in the certificate and data in accompanying BPKM data Attributes;
- incompatible security capabilities.

BPI+'s associated OSS document [7] provides a description of the particular CMTS MIB objects which control the actions a CMTS takes in the event any of the above error conditions occur.

When a CM receives an Authorization Reject indicating a permanent failure condition, the Authorization State machine moves into a Silent state. CMs MUST issue an SNMP Trap upon entering the Silent state.

#### 7.1.2.3.7 Authorization Reject (Auth Reject)

The CM receives an Authorization Reject in response to an Authorization Request. The error code in the Authorization Reject does not indicate the failure was due to a permanent error condition. As a result, the CM's Authorization state machine will set a wait timer and transition into the Authorization Reject Wait State. The CM remains in this state until the timer expires, at which time it will re-attempt authorization.

NOTE: The following events are sent by an Authorization state machine to the TEK state machine.

#### 7.1.2.3.8 [TEK] Stop

Sent by the Authorization FSM to an active (non -START state) TEK FSM to terminate the FSM and remove the corresponding SAID's keying material from the CM's key table.

#### 7.1.2.3.9 [TEK] Authorized

Sent by the Authorization FSM to a non-active (START state), but valid TEK FSM.

#### 7.1.2.3.10 [TEK] Authorization Pending (Auth Pend)

Sent by the Authorization FSM to a specific TEK FSM to place that TEK FSM in a wait state until the Authorization FSM can complete its re-authorization operation.

#### 7.1.2.3.11 [TEK] Authorization Complete (Auth Comp)

Sent by the Authorization FSM to a TEK FSM in the Operational Reauthorize Wait (Op Reauth Wait) or Rekey Reauthorize Wait (Rekey Reauth Wait) states to clear the wait state begun by a TEK FSM Authorization Pending event.

#### 7.1.2.4 Parameters

All configuration parameter values are specified in the TFTP-downloaded parameter file (see annex A).

#### 7.1.2.4.1 Authorize Wait Timeout (Auth Wait Timeout)

Timeout period between sending Authorization Request messages from Authorize Wait state. See clause A.1.1.1.1.

#### 7.1.2.4.2 Reauthorize Wait Timeout (Reauth Wait Timeout)

Timeout period between sending Authorization Request messages from Reauthorize Wait state. See clause A.1.1.1.2.

#### 7.1.2.4.3 Authorization Grace Time (Auth Grace Timeout)

Amount of time before authorization is scheduled to expire that the CM starts re-authorization. See clause A.1.1.1.3.

29

#### 7.1.2.4.4 Authorize Reject Wait Timeout (Auth Reject Wait Timeout)

Amount of time a CM's Authorization FSM remains in the Authorize Reject Wait state before transitioning to the Start state. See clause A.1.1.1.3.

#### 7.1.2.5 Actions

Actions taken in association with state transitions are listed by <event/rcvd message> - <state> below:

- **1-A** S tart (*Provisioned*)  $\rightarrow$  Auth Wait
  - send Authentication Information message to CMTS
  - send Authorization Request message to CMTS
  - set Authorization Request retry timer to Authorize Wait Timeout
- **2-B** Auth Wait (Auth Reject)  $\rightarrow$  Auth Reject Wait
  - clear Authorization Request retry timer
  - set a wait timer to Authorize Reject Wait Timeout
- **2-D** Reauth Wait (Auth Reject)  $\rightarrow$  Auth Reject Wait
  - clear Authorization Request retry timer
  - generate TEK FSM Stop events for all active TEK state machines
  - set a wait timer to Authorize Reject Wait Timeout
- **3-B** Auth Wait (Perm Auth Reject)  $\rightarrow$  Silent
  - clear Authorization Request retry timer
  - disable all forwarding of CPE traffic
- **3-D** Reauth Wait (Perm Auth Reject)  $\rightarrow$  Silent
  - clear Authorization Request retry timer
  - generate TEK FSM Stop events for all active TEK state machines
  - disable all forwarding of CPE traffic
- **4-B** Auth Wait (Auth Reply)  $\rightarrow$  Authorized
  - clear Authorization Request retry timer
  - decrypt and record Authorization Key delivered with Authorization Reply
  - start TEK FSMs for all SAIDs listed in Authorization Reply (provided the CM supports the cryptographic suite that is associated with a SAID) and issue a TEK FSM Authorized event for each of the new TEK FSMs
  - set the Authorization Grace timer to go off 'Authorization Grace Time' seconds prior to the supplied Authorization Key's scheduled expiration
- **4-D** Reauth Wait (Auth Reply)  $\rightarrow$  Authorized
  - clear Authorization Request retry timer
  - decrypt and record Authorization Key delivered with Authorization Reply

• start TEK FSMs for any newly authorized SAIDs listed in Authorization Reply (provided the CM supports the cryptographic suite that is associated with the new SAID) and issue TEK FSM Authorized event for each of the new TEK FSMs

30

- generate TEK FSM Authorization Complete events for any currently active TEK FSMs whose corresponding SAIDs were listed in Authorization Reply
- generate TEK FSM Stop events for any currently active TEK FSMs whose corresponding SAIDs were not listed in Authorization Reply
- set the Authorization Grace timer to go off 'Authorization Grace Time' seconds prior to the supplied Authorization Key's scheduled expiration
- **5-B** Auth Wait (*Timeout*)  $\rightarrow$  Auth Wait
  - send Authentication Information message to CMTS
  - send Authorization Request message to CMTS
  - set Authorization Request retry timer to Authorize Wait Timeout
- **5-D** Reauth Wait (*Timeout*)  $\rightarrow$  Reauth Wait
  - send Authorization Request message to CMTS
  - set Authorization Request retry timer to Reauthorize Wait Timeout
- **5-E** Auth Reject Wait (*Timeout*)  $\rightarrow$  Start
  - no protocol actions associated with state transition
- **6-C** Authorized (Auth Grace Timeout)  $\rightarrow$  Reauth Wait
  - send Authorization Request message to CMTS
  - set Authorization Request retry timer to Reauthorize Wait Timeout
- **7-C** Authorized (*Auth Invalid*)  $\rightarrow$  Reauth Wait
  - clear Authorization Grace timer
  - send Authorization Request message to CMTS
  - set Authorization Request retry timer to Reauthorize Wait Timeout
  - if the Authorization Invalid event is associated with a particular TEK FSM, generate a TEK FSM Authorization Pending event for the TEK state machine responsible for the Authorization Invalid event (i.e. the TEK FSM that either generated the event, or sent the Key Request message the CMTS responded to with an Authorization Invalid message)
- **7-D** Reauth Wait (*Auth Invalid*)  $\rightarrow$  Reauth Wait
  - if the Authorization Invalid event is associated with a particular TEK FSM, generate a TEK FSM Authorization Pending event for the TEK state machine responsible for the Authorization Invalid event (i.e. the TEK FSM that either generated the event, or sent the Key Request message the CMTS responded to with an Authorization Invalid message)
- 8-C Authorized (*Reauth*)  $\rightarrow$  Reauth Wait
  - clear Authorization grace timer
  - send Authorization Request message to CMTS
  - set Authorization Request retry timer to Reauthorize Wait Timeout

### 7.1.3 TEK state machine

The TEK state machine consists of six states and nine events (including receipt of messages) that can trigger state transitions. Like the Authorization state machine, the TEK state machine is presented in both a state flow diagram and a state transition matrix. And as was the case for the Authorization state machine, the state transition matrix MUST be used as the definitive specification of protocol actions associated with each state transition.

31

Shaded states in figure 7.2 (Operational, Rekey Wait, and Rekey Reauthorize Wait) have valid keying material and encrypted traffic can be passed.

The Authorization state machine starts an independent TEK state machine for each of its authorized SAIDs.

As mentioned previously in clause 7.1.1, the CMTS maintains two active TEKs per SAID. The CMTS includes in its Key Replies both of these TEKs, along with their remaining lifetimes. The CMTS encrypts downstream traffic with the older of its two TEKs and decrypts upstream traffic with either the older or newer TEK, depending upon which of the two keys the CM was using at the time. The CM encrypts upstream traffic with the newer of its two TEKs and decrypts downstream traffic with either the older or newer TEK, depending upon which of the two keys the CM was using at the time. The CM encrypts upstream traffic with the newer of its two TEKs and decrypts downstream traffic with either the older or newer TEK, depending upon which of the two keys the CMTS was using at the time. See clause 9 for details on CM and CMTS key usage requirements.

Through operation of a TEK state machine, the CM attempts to keep its copies of a SAID's TEKs synchronized with those of its CMTS. A TEK state machine issues Key Requests to refresh copies of its SAID's keying material after the scheduled expiration time of the older of its two TEKs and before the expiration of its newer TEK. To accommodate for CM/CMTS clock skew and other system processing and transmission delays, the CM schedules its Key Requests a configurable number of seconds (i.e. 'TEK Grace Time') before the newer TEK's estimated expiration in the CMTS. With the receipt of the Key Reply, the CM MUST always update its records with the TEK Parameters from both TEKs contained in the Key Reply Message. Figure 7.2 illustrates the CM's scheduling of its key refreshes in conjunction with its management of a BPI+ SA's active TEKs.

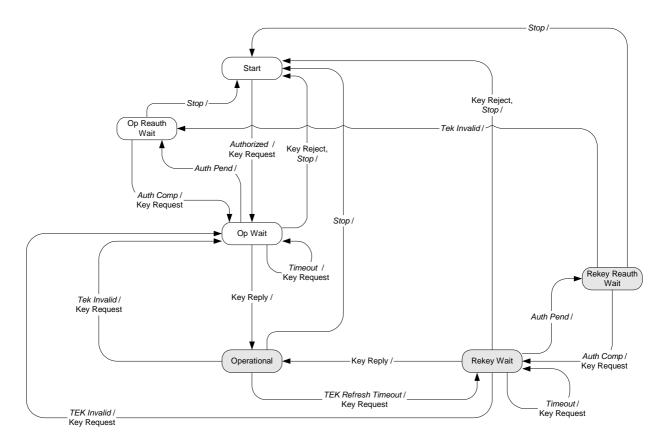


Figure 7.2: TEK state machine flow diagram

State	(A) Start	(B) Op Wait	(C) Op Reauth	(D) Op	(E) Rekey Wait	(F) Rekey
Event or Rcvd Message			Wait			Reauth Wait
(1) Stop		Start	Start	Start	Start	Start
(2) Authorized	Op Wait					
(3) Auth Pend		Op Reauth Wait			Rekey Re- auth Wait	
(4) Auth Comp			Op Wait			Rekey Wait
(5) TEK Invalid				Op Wait	Op Wait	Op Reauth Wait
(6) Timeout		Op Wait			Rekey Wait	
(7) TEK Refresh Timeout				Rekey Wait		
(8) Key Reply		Operational			Operational	
(9) Key Reject		Start			Start	

#### Table 7.2: TEK FSM state transition matrix

#### 7.1.3.1 States

#### 7.1.3.1.1 Start

This is the initial state of the FSM. No resources are assigned to or used by the FSM in this state - e.g. all timers are off, and no processing is scheduled.

#### 7.1.3.1.2 Operational Wait (Op Wait)

The TEK state machine has sent its initial request (Key Request) for its SAID's keying material (traffic encryption key and CBC initialization vector), and is waiting for a reply from the CMTS.

#### 7.1.3.1.3 Operational Reauthorize Wait (Op Reauth Wait)

The wait state the TEK state machine is placed in if it does not have valid keying material while the Authorization state machine is in the in the middle of a reauthorization cycle.

#### 7.1.3.1.4 Operational

The CM has valid keying material for the associated SAID.

#### 7.1.3.1.5 Rekey Wait

The TEK Refresh Timer has expired and the CM has requested a key update for this SAID. Note that the newer of its two TEKs has not expired and can still be used for both encrypting and decrypting data traffic.

ETSI

#### 7.1.3.1.6 Rekey Reauthorize Wait (Rekey Reauth Wait)

The wait state the TEK state machine is placed in if the TEK state machine has valid traffic keying material, has an outstanding request for the latest keying material, and the Authorization state machine initiates a reauthorization cycle.

#### 7.1.3.2 Messages

Note that the message formats are defined in detail in clause 7.2.

#### 7.1.3.2.1 Key Request

Request a TEK for this SAID. Sent by the CM to the CMTS and authenticated with keyed message digest. The message authentication key is derived from the Authorization Key.

#### 7.1.3.2.2 Key Reply

Response from the CMTS carrying the two active sets of traffic keying material for this SAID. Sent by the CMTS to the CM, it includes the SAID's traffic encryption keys, triple DES encrypted with a key encryption key derived from the Authorization Key. The Key Reply message is authenticated with a keyed message digest; the authentication key is derived from the Authorization Key.

#### 7.1.3.2.3 Key Reject

Response from the CMTS to the CM to indicate this SAID is no longer valid and no key will be sent. The Key Reject message is authenticated with a keyed message digest; the authentication key is derived from the Authorization Key.

#### 7.1.3.2.4 TEK Invalid

The CMTS sends a CM this message if it determines that the CM encrypted an upstream Packet Data PDU with an invalid TEK; i.e. a SAID's TEK key sequence number, contained within the received packet's Baseline Privacy Extended Header element, is out of the CMTS's range of known, valid sequence numbers for that SAID.

#### 7.1.3.3 Events

#### 7.1.3.3.1 Stop

Sent by the Authorization FSM to an active (non-START state) TEK FSM to terminate TEK FSM and remove the corresponding SAID's keying material from the CM's key table. See clause 7.1.2.3.8.

#### 7.1.3.3.2 Authorized

Sent by the Authorization FSM to a non-active (START state) TEK FSM to notify TEK FSM of successful authorization. See clause 7.1.2.3.9.

#### 7.1.3.3.3 Authorization Pending (Auth Pend)

Sent by the Authorization FSM to TEK FSM to place TEK FSM in a wait state while Authorization FSM completes re-authorization. See clause 7.1.2.3.10.

#### 7.1.3.3.4 Authorization Complete (Auth Comp)

Sent by the Authorization FSM to a TEK FSM in the Operational Reauthorize Wait or Rekey Reauthorize Wait states to clear the wait state begun by the prior Authorization Pending event. See clause 7.1.2.3.11.

#### 7.1.3.3.5 TEK Invalid

This event can be triggered by either a CM's data packet decryption logic, or by the receipt of a TEK Invalid message from the CMTS.

34

A CM's data packet decryption logic triggers a TEK Invalid event if it recognizes a loss of TEK key synchronization between itself and the encrypting CMTS; i.e. a SAID's TEK key sequence number, contained within the received, downstream packet's Baseline Privacy Extended Header element, is out of the CM's range of known sequence numbers for that SAID.

A CMTS sends a CM a TEK Invalid message, triggering a TEK Invalid event within the CM, if the CMTS's decryption logic recognizes a loss of TEK key synchronization between itself and the CM.

#### 7.1.3.3.6 Timeout

A retry timer timeout. Generally, the particular request is retransmitted.

#### 7.1.3.3.7 TEK Refresh Timeout

The TEK refresh timer timed out. This timer event signals the TEK state machine to issue a new Key Request in order to refresh its keying material. The refresh timer is set to fire a configurable length of time (*TEK Grace Time*) before the expiration of the newer TEK the CM currently holds. This is configured via the CMTS to occur after the scheduled expiration of the older of the two TEKs.

#### 7.1.3.4 Parameters

All configuration parameter values are specified in TFTP downloaded parameter file (see annex A).

#### 7.1.3.4.1 Operational Wait Timeout

Timeout period between sending of Key Request messages from the Op Wait state. See clause A.1.1.1.4.

#### 7.1.3.4.2 Rekey Wait Timeout

Timeout period between sending of Key Request messages from the Rekey Wait state. See clause A.1.1.1.5.

#### 7.1.3.4.3 TEK Grace Time

Time interval, in seconds, before the estimated expiration of a TEK that the CM starts rekeying for a new TEK.

TEK Grace Time is specified in a configuration setting within the TFTP-downloaded parameter file, and is the same across all SAIDs. See clause A.1.1.1.6.

#### 7.1.3.5 Actions

**1-B** Op Wait  $(Stop) \rightarrow Start$ 

- clear Key Request retry timer
- terminate TEK FSM
- **1-C** Op Reauth Wait  $(Stop) \rightarrow Start$ 
  - terminate TEK FSM
- **1-D** Operational  $(Stop) \rightarrow Start$ 
  - clear TEK refresh timer, which is timer set to go off '*Tek Grace Time*' seconds prior to the TEK's scheduled expiration time
  - terminate TEK FSM

• remove SAID keying material from key table

35

- **1-E** Rekey Wait(*Stop*)  $\rightarrow$  Start
  - clear Key Request retry timer
  - terminate TEK FSM
  - remove SAID keying material from key table
- **1-F** Rekey Reauth Wait(*Stop*)  $\rightarrow$  Start
  - terminate TEK FSM
  - remove SAID keying material from key table
- **2-A** Start (*Authorized*)  $\rightarrow$  Op Wait
  - send Key Request Message to CMTS
  - set Key Request retry timer to Operational Wait Timeout
- **3-B** Op Wait (*Auth Pend*)  $\rightarrow$  Op Reauth Wait
  - clear Key Request retry timer
- **3-E** Rekey Wait (*Auth Pend*)  $\rightarrow$  Rekey Reauth Wait
  - clear Key Request retry timer
- **4-C** Op Reauth Wait (*Auth Comp*)  $\rightarrow$  Op Wait
  - send Key Request message to CMTS
  - set Key Request retry timer to Operational Wait Timeout
- **4-F** Rekey Reauth Wait (*Auth Comp*)  $\rightarrow$  Rekey Wait
  - send Key Request message to CMTS
  - set Key Request retry timer to Rekey Wait Timeout
- **5-D** Operational (*TEK Invalid*)  $\rightarrow$  Op Wait
  - clear TEK refresh timer
  - send Key Request message to CMTS
  - set Key Request retry timer to Operational Wait Timeout
  - remove SAID keying material from key table
- **5-E** Rekey Wait (*TEK Invalid*)  $\rightarrow$  Op Wait
  - clear Key Request retry timer
  - send Key Request message to CMTS
  - set Key Request retry timer to Operational Wait Timeout
  - remove SAID keying material from key table
- **5-F** Rekey Reauth Wait (*TEK Invalid*)  $\rightarrow$  Op Reauth Wait
  - remove SAID keying material from key table

- **6-B** Op Wait (*Timeout*)  $\rightarrow$  Op Wait
  - send Key Request message to CMTS
  - set Key Request retry timer to Operational Wait Timeout
- **6-E** Rekey Wait (*Timeout*)  $\rightarrow$  Rekey Wait
  - send Key Request message to CMTS
  - set Key Request retry timer to Rekey Wait Timeout
- **7-D** Operational (*TEK Grace Timeout*)  $\rightarrow$  Rekey Wait
  - send Key Request message to CMTS
  - set Key Request retry timer to Rekey Wait Timeout
- **8-B** Op Wait (Key Reply)  $\rightarrow$  Operational

NOTE 1: Key Reply passed message authentication.

- clear Key Request retry timer
- process contents of Key Reply message and incorporate new keying material into key database
- set the TEK refresh timer to go off 'TEK Grace Time' seconds prior to the key's scheduled expiration
- **8-E** Rekey Wait (Key Reply)  $\rightarrow$  Operational

NOTE 2: Key Reply passed message authentication.

- clear Key Request retry timer
- process contents of Key Reply message and incorporate new keying material into key database
- set the TEK refresh timer to go off 'TEK Grace Time' seconds prior to the key's scheduled expiration
- **9-B** Op Wait (Key Reject)  $\rightarrow$  Start

NOTE 3: Key Reject passed message authentication.

- clear Key Request retry timer
- terminate TEK FSM

**9-E** Rekey Wait (Key Reject)  $\rightarrow$  Start

- clear Key Request retry timer
- terminate TEK FSM
- remove SAID keying material from key table

## 7.2 Key management message formats

NOTE: Message formats for the Baseline Privacy Key Management protocol are modelled after those of the Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) protocol, defined in RFC 2865 [27], and an Internet standards track protocol. BPKM, like RADIUS, adheres to a client/server model. Unlike RADIUS, BPKM will not run over UDP/IP. BPKM messages are encapsulated within RF MAC management messages.

Baseline Privacy Key Management employs two MAC message types: BPKM-REQ and BPKM-RSP. ES 201 488-2 [2] defines the specific type values assigned to them.

Type Value	Message Name	Message Description
See ES 201 488-2 [2]	BPKM-REQ	Privacy Key Management Request [CM -> CMTS]
See ES 201 488-2 [2]	BPKM-RSP	Privacy Key Management Response [CMTS -> CM]

Table 7.3: Baseline privacy key management MAC messages

37

While these two MAC management message types distinguish between BPKM requests (CM to CMTS) and responses (CMTS to CM), more detailed information about message contents is encoded in the BPKM messages themselves. This maintains a clean separation between privacy management functions and RF MAC upstream bandwidth allocation, timing and synchronization (RF MAC management's principal responsibilities).

# 7.2.1 Packet formats

Exactly one BPKM message is encapsulated in the Management Message Payload field of a MAC management message.

A summary of the BPKM message format is shown below. The fields are transmitted from left to right.

0	1	2	3
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	89012345	678901234	5678901
+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-	+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-	+-	+-+-+-+-+-+-+
Code	Identifier	Lengt	.h
+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-	+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-	+-	+-+-+-+-+-+-+
Attributes			
+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-	+-+-+-+-		

#### Code:

The Code field is one octet, and identifies the type of BPKM packet. When a packet is received with an invalid Code field, it SHOULD be silently discarded.

BPKM Codes (decimal) are assigned as follows:

Code	BPKM Message Type	MAC Management Message Name
0-3	Reserved	-
4	Auth Request	BPKM-REQ
5	Auth Reply	BPKM-RSP
6	Auth Reject	BPKM-RSP
7	Key Request	BPKM-REQ
8	Key Reply	BPKM-RSP
9	Key Reject	BPKM-RSP
10	Auth Invalid	BPKM-RSP
11	TEK Invalid	BPKM-RSP
12	Authent Info	BPKM-REQ
13	Map Request	BPKM-REQ
14	Map Reply	BPKM-RSP
15	Map Reject	BPKM-RSP
16-255	Reserved	-

#### Table 7.4: Baseline privacy key management message codes

## **Identifier:**

The Identifier field is one octet. A CM uses the identifier to match a CMTS's responses to the CM's requests.

The CM MUST change (e.g. increment, wrapping around to 0 after reaching 255) the Identifier field whenever it issues a new BPKM message. A 'new' message is an Authorization Request, Key Request or SA Map Request that is not a retransmission being sent in response to a Timeout event. For retransmissions, the Identifier field MUST remain unchanged.

The Identifier field in Authentication Information messages, which are informative and do not effect any response messaging, MAY be set to zero.

The Identifier field in a CMTS's BPKM response message MUST match the Identifier field of the BPKM Request message the CMTS is responding to. The Identifier field in TEK Invalid messages, which are not sent in response to BPKM requests, MUST be set to zero. The Identifier field in unsolicited Authorization Invalid messages MUST be set to zero.

38

On reception of a BPKM response message, the CM associates the message with a particular state machine (the Authorization state machine in the case of Authorization Replies, Authorization Rejects, and Authorization Invalids; a particular TEK state machine in the case of Key Replies, Key Rejects and TEK Invalids; a particular SA Mapping state machine in the case of SA Map Replies and SA Map Rejects).

A CM MAY keep track of the Identifier of its latest, pending Authorization Request. The CM MAY silently discard Authorization Replies and Authorization Rejects whose Identifier fields do not match those of the pending requests.

A CM MAY keep track of the Identifier of its latest, pending Key Request. The CM MAY silently discard Key Replies and Key Rejects whose Identifier fields do not match those of the pending requests.

A CM MAY keep track of the Identifier of its latest, pending SA Map Request. The CM MAY silently discard SA Map Replies and SA Map Rejects whose Identifier fields do not match those of the pending requests.

#### Length:

The Length field is two octets. It indicates the length of the Attribute fields in octets. The length field does not include the Code, Identifier and Length fields. Octets outside the range of the Length field MUST be treated as padding and ignored on reception. If the packet is shorter than the Length field indicates, it SHOULD be silently discarded. The minimum length is 0 and maximum length is 1 490.

## Attributes:

BPKM Attributes carry the specific authentication, authorization and key management data exchanged between client and server. Each BPKM packet type has its own set of required and optional Attributes. Unless explicitly stated, there are no requirements on the ordering of attributes within a BPKM message.

The end of the list of Attributes is indicated by the Length of the BPKM packet.

Attributes are type/length/value (TLV) encoded, as shown below. The fields are transmitted from left to right.

Packet formats for each of the BPKM messages are described below. The descriptions list the BPKM attributes contained within each BPKM message type. The Attributes themselves are described in clause 7.2.2. Unknown attributes MUST be ignored on receipt, and skipped over while scanning for recognized attributes.

The CMTS MUST silently discard all requests that do not contain ALL required attributes. The CM MUST silently discard all responses that do not contain ALL required attributes.

# 7.2.1.1 Authorization Request (Auth Request)

#### Code:

• 4

# Attributes:

Attribute	Contents
CM-Identification	contains information used to identify cable modem to CMTS
CM-Certificate	contains the CM's X.509 user certificate
Security-Capabilities	describes requesting CM's security capabilities
SAID	CM's primary SAID equal to the Primary SID

# Table 7.5: Authorization request attributes

The CM-Identification attribute contains a set of data that identifies the requesting cable modem to the CMTS. Note that the CMTS is in all likelihood using only a single item in the CM-Identification attribute (e.g. CM MAC address) as a CM handle. While a specific item could be selected for inclusion in the Authorization Request message, including the entire CM-Identification attribute for client identification provides vendors with greater flexibility in the headend's system design.

The CM-Certificate attribute contains an X.509 CM certificate issued by the CM's manufacturer. The CM's X.509 certificate is a public-key certificate which binds the CM's identifying information to its RSA public key in a verifiable manner. The X.509 certificate is digitally signed by the CM's manufacturer, and that signature can be verified by a CMTS that knows the manufacturer's public key. The manufacturer's public key is placed in an X.509 certification authority (CA) certificate, which in turn is signed by a higher level certification authority.

The Security-Capabilities attribute is a compound attribute describing the requesting cable modem's security capabilities. This includes the packet data encryption algorithm(s) a CM supports and the packet data authentication algorithm(s) supported (of which there are currently none) and the version of the Baseline Privacy Protocol supported (of which there is currently one: version 1 for BPI+).

A SAID attribute contains a Baseline Privacy security association identifier, or SAID. In this case, the provided SAID is the CM's BPI+ primary SAID, which is equal to the Primary SID assigned to the cable modem during RF MAC registration.

# 7.2.1.2 Authorization Reply (Auth Reply)

Sent by the CMTS to a client CM in response to an Authorization Request, the Authorization Reply message contains an Authorization Key, the key's lifetime, the key's sequence number, and a list of SA-Descriptors identifying the Primary and Static Security Associations the requesting cable modem is authorized to access and their particular properties (e.g. type, cryptographic suite). The Authorization Key MUST be encrypted with the CM's public key. The SA-Descriptor list MUST include a descriptor for the primary BPI+ SAID reported to the CMTS in the corresponding Authorization Request. The SA-Descriptor list MAY include descriptors of Static SAIDs the CM is authorized to access.

# Code:

•

5

# Attributes:

Table 7.6:	Authorization	reply	attributes
------------	---------------	-------	------------

Attribute	Contents
AUTH-Key	Authorization (AUTH) Key, encrypted with the target client CM's public key
Key-Lifetime	Authorization key lifetime
Key-Sequence-Number	Authorization key sequence number
(one or more) SA-Descriptor	Each SA-Descriptor compound Attribute specifies a SAID and additional properties of the SA.

# 7.2.1.3 Authorization Reject (Auth Reject)

CMTS responds to a CM's authorization request with an Authorization Reject message if the CMTS rejects the CM's authorization request.

Code:

• 6

Attributes:

# Table 7.7: Authorization reject attributes

40

Attribute	Contents
Error-Code	Error code identifying reason for rejection of authorization request
Display-String (optional)	Display String providing reason for rejection of authorization request

The Error-Code and Display-String attributes describe to the requesting CM the reason for the authorization failure.

# 7.2.1.4 Key Request

Code:

• 7

# Attributes:

#### Table 7.8: Key request attributes

Attribute	Contents
CM-Identification	Contains information used to identify cable modem to CMTS
Key-Sequence-Number	Authorization key sequence number
SAID	Security Association ID
HMAC-Digest	Keyed SHA message digest

The HMAC-Digest Attribute is a keyed message digest. The HMAC-Digest Attribute MUST be the final Attribute in the Key Request's Attribute list. The message digest is performed over the packet header and all of the Key Request's Attributes, other than the HMAC-Digest, in the order in which they appear within the packet.

Inclusion of the keyed digest allows the CMTS to authenticate the Key Request message. The HMAC-Digest's authentication key is derived from the Authorization Key. See clause 10, Cryptographic Methods, for details.

# 7.2.1.5 Key Reply

# Code:

• 8

# **Attributes:**

# Table 7.9: Key reply attributes

Attribute	Contents
Key-Sequence-Number	Authorization key sequence number
SAID	Security Association ID
TEK-Parameters	'Older' generation of key parameters relevant to SAID
TEK-Parameters	'Newer' generation of key parameters relevant to SAID
HMAC-Digest	Keyed SHA message digest

The TEK-Parameters Attribute is a compound attribute containing all of the keying material corresponding to a particular generation of a SAID's TEK. This would include the TEK, the TEK's remaining key lifetime, its key sequence number, and the CBC initialization vector. The TEK is encrypted. See clause 7.2.2.13 for details.

At all times the CMTS maintains two sets of active generations of keying material per SAID. (A set of keying material includes the TEK and its corresponding CBC initialization vector). One set corresponds to the 'older' generation of keying material, the second set corresponds to the 'newer' generation of keying material. The newer generation has a key sequence number one greater than (modulo 16) that of the older generation. Clause 9.1 specifies CMTS requirements for maintaining and using a SAID's two active generations of keying material.

41

The CMTS distributes to a client CM both generations of active keying material. Thus, the Key Reply message contains two TEK-Parameters Attributes, each containing the keying material for one of the SAIDs two active sets of keying material.

The HMAC-Digest Attribute is a keyed message digest. The HMAC-Digest Attribute MUST be the final Attribute in the Key Reply's Attribute list. The message digest is performed over the BPKM message header (starting with the BPKM Code field) and all of the Key Reply's Attributes, other than the HMAC-Digest, in the order in which they appear within the packet.

Inclusion of the keyed digest allows the receiving client to authenticate the Key Reply message and ensure CM and CMTS have synchronized Authorization Keys. The HMAC-Digest's authentication key is derived from the Authorization Key. See clause 10, for details.

# 7.2.1.6 Key Reject

Receipt of a Key Reject indicates the receiving client CM is no longer authorized for a particular SAID.

#### Code:

• 9

# Attributes:

# Table 7.10: Key reject attributes

Attribute	Contents
Key-Sequence-Number	Authorization key sequence number
SAID	Security Association ID
Error-Code	Error code identifying reason for rejection of Key Request
Display-String (optional)	Display string containing reason for Key Reject
HMAC-Digest	Keyed SHA message digest

The HMAC-Digest Attribute is a keyed message digest. The HMAC-Digest Attribute MUST be the final Attribute in the Key Reject's Attribute list. The message digest is performed over the BPKM message header (starting with the BPKM Code field) and all of the Key Reject's Attributes, other than the HMAC-Digest, in the order in which they appear within the packet.

Inclusion of the keyed digest allows the receiving client to authenticate the Key Reject message and ensure CM and CMTS have synchronized Authorization Keys. The HMAC-Digest's authentication key is derived from the Authorization Key. See clause 10, for details.

# 7.2.1.7 Authorization Invalid

The CMTS can send an Authorization Invalid message to a client CM as:

- an unsolicited indication; or
- a response to a message received from that CM.

In either case, the Authorization Invalid message instructs the receiving CM to re-authorize with its CMTS.

The CMTS sends an Authorization Invalid in response to a Key Request if:

1) the CMTS does not recognize the CM as being authorized (i.e. no valid Authorization Key associated with the requesting cable modem); or

2) verification of the Key Request's keyed message digest (in HMAC-Digest Attribute) failed, indicating a loss of Authorization Key synchronization between CM and CMTS.

42

#### Code:

• 10

# Attributes:

# Table 7.11: Authorization invalid attributes

Attribute	Contents
Error-Code	Error code identifying reason for Authorization Invalid
Display-String (optional)	Display String describing failure condition

# 7.2.1.8 TEK Invalid

The CMTS sends a TEK Invalid message to a client CM if the CMTS determines that the CM encrypted an upstream Packet Data PDU with an invalid TEK; i.e. a SAID's TEK key sequence number, contained within the received packet's Baseline Privacy Extended Header element, is out of the CMTS's range of known, valid sequence numbers for that SAID.

# Code:

• 11

# Attributes:

# Table 7.12: TEK invalid attributes

Attribute	Contents
Key-Sequence-Number	Authorization key sequence number
SAID	Security Association ID
Error-Code	Error code identifying reason for TEK Invalid message
Display-String (optional)	Display string containing vendor-defined in-formation
HMAC-Digest	Keyed SHA message digest

The HMAC-Digest Attribute is a keyed message digest. The HMAC-Digest Attribute MUST be the final Attribute in the TEK Invalid's Attribute list. The message digest is performed over the BPKM message header (starting with the BPKM Code field) and all of the TEK Invalid's Attributes, other than the HMAC-Digest, in the order in which they appear within the packet.

Inclusion of the keyed digest allows the receiving client to authenticate the TEK Invalid message and ensure CM and CMTS have synchronized Authorization Keys. The HMAC-Digest's authentication key is derived from the Authorization Key. See clause 10, for details.

# 7.2.1.9 Authentication Information (Authent Info)

The Authentication Info message contains a single CA-Certificate Attribute, containing an X.509 CA certificate for the manufacturer of the CM. The CM's X.509 user certificate MUST have been issued by the certification authority identified by the X.509 CA certificate. All X.509 CA certificates MUST be issued by a root certification authority.

Authentication Information messages are strictly informative: while the CM MUST transmit Authent Info messages as indicated by the Authentication state model (see clause 7.1.2), the CMTS MAY ignore them.

Code:

• 12

Attributes:

#### Table 7.13: Authentication information attributes

43

Attribute	Contents									
CA-Certificate	certificate of manufacturer CA that issued CM certificate									

The CA-certificate attribute contains an X.509 CA certificate for the CA that issued the CM's X.509 user certificate. The certification authority issues these CA-certificates to certified CM manufacturers.

# 7.2.1.10 SA Map Request (MAP Request)

A CM modem sends SA Map Requests to its CMTS to request the mapping of a particular downstream traffic flow to a BPI+ SA. Clause 8 describes the SA Mapping state model which uses the message.

#### Code:

• 13

# Attributes:

Table 7.14: SA map rec	quest attributes
------------------------	------------------

Attribute	Contents
	Contains information used to identify cable modem to CMTS
-	Contains addressing information identifying the downstream traffic flow CM is requesting an SA mapping for

# 7.2.1.11 SA Map Reply (Map Reply)

A CMTS sends an SA Map Reply as a positive response to a client CM's SA Map Request. The SA Map Reply informs the CM of a mapping between a queried address and a BPI+ SA. Clause 8 describes the SA Mapping state model which uses the message.

# Code:

• 14

# Attributes:

#### Table 7.15: SA map reply attributes

Attribute	Contents
SA-Query	Contains addressing information identifying the
	downstream traffic flow CM is requested an SA mapping for
SA-Descriptor	SA-Descriptor compound Attribute specifies the mapped
	SA's SAID and other properties.

# 7.2.1.12 SAID Map Reject (Map Reject)

A CMTS sends SA Map Reject as a negative response to a client CM's SA Map Request. The SA Map Reject informs the CM that either:

- 1) downstream traffic flow identified in the SA-Query Attribute is not being encrypted; or
- 2) the requesting CM is not authorized to receive that traffic.

The contents of an error code attribute distinguishes between the two cases. Clause 8 describes the SA Mapping state model which uses the message.

Code:

• 15

# Attributes:

Attribute	Contents
SA-Query	Contains addressing information identifying the
	downstream traffic flow CM requested an SA mapping for
Error-Code	Error code identifying reason for rejection of SA Map
	Request
Display-String (optional)	Display string containing reason for Map Reject

# Table 7.16: SA MAP reject attributes

44

# 7.2.2 BPKM attributes

A summary of the Attribute format is shown below. The fields are transmitted from left to right.

# Type:

The Type field is one octet. Values of the BPKM Type field are specified below. Note that Type values between 0 and 127 are defined within the Baseline Privacy Specification, values between 128 and 255 are vendor-assigned Attribute Types.

A BPKM server MUST ignore Attributes with an unknown Type.

A BPKM client MUST ignore Attributes with an unknown Type.

BPKM client and server (i.e. CM and CMTS) MAY log receipt of unknown attribute types.

45	

Туре	BPKM Attribute
0	Reserved
1	Serial-Number
2	Manufacturer-ID
3	MAC-Address
4	RSA-Public-Key
5	CM-Identification
6	Display-String
7	AUTH-KEY
8	TEK
9	Key-Lifetime
10	Key-Sequence-Number
11	HMAC-Digest
12	SAID
13	TEK-Parameters
14	SA-Flag OBSOLETED
15	CBC-IV
16	Error-Code
17	CA-Certificate
18	CM-Certificate
19	Security-Capabilities
20	Cryptographic-Suite
21	Cryptographic-Suite-List
22	BPI-Version
23	SA-Descriptor
24	SA-Type
25	SA-Query
26	SA-Query-Type
27	IP-Address
28 to 126	Reserved
127	Vendor-Defined
128 to 255	Vendor-assigned attribute types

#### Table 7.17: BPKM attribute types

#### Length:

The Length field is 2 octets, and indicates the length of this Attribute's Value field, in octets. The length field *does not include* the Type and Length fields (see note). The minimum Attribute Length is 0, the maximum Length is 1 487.

NOTE: This is consistent with both the TLV encoding employed in the RF Mac's Extended Header Elements, and the TLV encoding employed for configuration settings in the CM Configuration File [3]. BPKM's TLV encoding differs from that employed by the RADIUS protocol, on which BPKM's basic message structure is based: the Length field of RADIUS attributes includes the Type and Length fields, as well as an attribute's Value field.

Packets containing attributes with invalid lengths SHOULD be silently discarded.

# Value:

The Value field is zero or more octets and contains information specific to the Attribute. The format and length of the Value field is determined by the Type and Length fields. All multi-octet integer quantities are in network-byte order, i.e. the octet containing the most-significant bits is the first transmitted on the wire.

Note that a 'string' does not require termination by an ASCII NULL because the Attribute already has a length field.

The format of the value field is one of five data types.

string	0 - 1 487 octets
unit8	8-bit unsigned integer
unit16	16-bit unsigned integer
unit32	32-bit unsigned integer
compound	collection of Attributes

Table 7.18: Attribute value data types

# 7.2.2.1 Serial-Number

#### **Description:**

This Attribute indicates the serial number assigned by the manufacturer to a cable modem device.

A summary of the Serial-Number Attribute format is shown below. The fields are transmitted from left to right.

0		1										2										3						
0 1	234	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1
+-+-+	+-+-+-	+	+ - +	+ - 1	+-+			+ - +	+ +	+	+	+ - +	+ - +	+ - +	⊢ – +	+ +	+ - +	+ - +	+ +	+	+	+ - +	+ - •	+	+	+	+	+-+
	Туре	. =	1	I							Le	eng	gtł	ı							5	Sti	ri	ng	••	•		
+-+-+	+-+-+-	+	+-+	+-4	+-+	- +	+	+ - +	+ +	+	+-+	+-+		+-+	+ - +	+-+	+-+	+ - +	+ +		+-+	+-+	+	+	+	+-+	+	+-+

#### Type:

1 for Serial-Number.

#### Length:

•  $\geq 0$  and  $\leq 255$ .

# String:

The String field is zero or more octets and contains a manufacturer-assigned serial number.

The manufacturer-assigned serial number MUST be encoded in the ISO/IEC 8859-1 [29] character encoding. The characters employed MUST be restricted to the following:

- A-Z (0x41-0x5A);
- a-z (0x61-0x7A);
- 0-9 (0x30-0x39);
- '-' (0xD2).

# 7.2.2.2 Manufacturer-ID

#### **Description:**

This Attribute identifies the manufacturer. The identifier is 3 octets long and contains the 3-octet Organizationally Unique Identifier (OUI) assigned to applying organizations by the IEEE 802 [23]. The first two bits of the 3-octet string are set to zero.

A summary of the Manufacturer-ID Attribute format is shown below. The fields are transmitted from left to right.

• 2 for Manufacturer-ID.

## Length:

3.

# String:

• The String field is three octets and contains an IEEE OUI.

# 7.2.2.3 MAC-Address

#### **Description:**

This Attribute identifies the IEEE MAC address assigned to the CM. Guaranteed to be unique, it is likely to be used as a cable modem handle/index at the CMTS.

47

A summary of the MAC-Address Attribute format is shown below. The fields are transmitted from left to right.

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 Type = 3 | Length | String...

# Type:

• 3 for MAC-Address.

#### Length:

• 6.

## String:

• The String field contains a 6-octet MAC address.

# 7.2.2.4 RSA-Public-Key

#### **Description:**

This Attribute is a string attribute containing a DER-encoded RSAPublicKey ASN.1 type, as defined in the RSA Encryption Standard PKCS #1 v2.0 [21].

- PKCS #1 v2.0 specifies that an RSA public key consists of both an RSA public modulus and an RSA public exponent; the RSAPublicKey type includes both of these as DER-encoded INTEGER types.
- PKCS #1 v2.0 states that the RSA public exponent may be standardized in specific applications, and the document suggests values of 3 or 65 537 (F4). Baseline Privacy Plus standardizes on F4 for a public exponent and employs a 1 024-bit modulus (Baseline Privacy employed a 768-bit modulus). In order to enable software upgrades of DOCSIS 1.0 hardware to BPI+, the BPI+ implementations MUST support a 768-bit modulus.

A summary of the Public-Key Attribute format is shown below. The fields are transmitted from left to right.

• 4 for RSA-Public-Key.

# Length:

• 106, 140, or 270 (length of DER-encoding, using F4 as the public exponent, and a 768-bit, 1 024-bit, or 2 048-bit public modulus, respectively).

48

# String:

• DER-encoded RSAPublicKey ASN.1 type.

# 7.2.2.5 CM-Identification

#### **Description:**

This Attribute is a compound attribute, consisting of a collection of sub-attributes. These sub-attributes contain information that can be used to uniquely identify a cable modem. Sub-attributes MUST include:

- Serial-Number;
- Manufacturer-ID;
- MAC-Address;
- RSA-Public-Key.

The CM-Identification MAY also contain optional Vendor-Defined Attributes.

#### Type:

• 5.

#### Length:

• ≥126.

# 7.2.2.6 Display-String

#### **Description:**

This Attribute contains a textual message. It is typically used to explain a failure response, and might be logged by the receiver for later retrieval by an SNMP manager. Display strings MUST be no longer than 128 bytes.

A summary of the Display-String Attribute format is shown below. The fields are transmitted from left to right.

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 Type = 6 | Length | String...

• 6 for Display String.

# Length:

•  $\geq 0$  and  $\leq 128$ .

# String:

• A string of characters. There is no requirement that the character string be null terminated; the length field always identifies the end of the string.

49

# 7.2.2.7 AUTH-Key

#### **Description:**

The Authorization Key is a 20 byte quantity, from which a key encryption key, and two message authentication keys (one for upstream requests, and a second for downstream replies) are derived.

This Attribute contains either a 96 or a 128-octet quantity containing the Authorization Key RSA-encrypted with the CM's 768-bit or 1 024-bit RSA public key. Details of the RSA encryption procedure are given in clause 7.5. The ciphertext produced by the RSA algorithm will be the length of the RSA modulus, i.e. either 96 octets or 128 octets.

0										1										2										3	
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1
+-+		+	+	+	+	+	+-+	+ - +	+ +	+	+ - +	+ +	+	+ - +	+	+ - +	+ - +	+	+	+	+	+ - +	+	+ - +	+ - +	+	+ - +	+ - +	+ - +	⊢ – +	+-+
Ι		5	Гуј	pe	=	7								Le	eng	gtł	ı							5	Sti	rir	ng	•			
+-+	+-																														

#### Type:

```
• 7 for AUTH-Key.
```

# Length:

• 96 or 128.

# String:

• 96 or 128-octet quantity representing an RSA-encrypted Authorization Key.

# 7.2.2.8 TEK

#### **Description:**

This Attribute contains an 8-octet quantity that is a TEK DES key, encrypted with a Key Encryption Key derived from the Authorization Key. TEK keys are encrypted using the Encrypt-Decrypt-Encrypt (EDE) mode of two-key triple DES. See clause 10, for details.

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 Type = 8 | Length | String ...

#### Type:

• 8 for TEK.

## Length:

8.

# String:

• 64-bit quantity representing a (two-key triple DES EDE mode) encrypted traffic encryption key.

50

# 7.2.2.9 Key-Lifetime

## **Description:**

This Attribute contains the lifetime, in seconds, of an Authorization Key or TEK. It is a 32-bit unsigned quantity representing the number of remaining seconds that the associated key will be valid.

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 Type = 9 | Length | unit 32 ... | ... unit 32 |

# Type:

• 9 for Key-Lifetime.

#### Length:

• 4.

#### unit32:

- 32-bit quantity representing key lifetime.
- A key lifetime of zero indicates that the corresponding Authorization Key or traffic encryption key is not valid.

# 7.2.2.10 Key-Sequence-Number

#### **Description:**

This Attribute contains a 4-bit sequence number for a TEK or Authorization Key. The 4-bit quantity, however, is stored in a single octet, with the high-order 4 bits set to 0.

A summary of the Key-Sequence-Number Attribute format is shown below. The fields are transmitted from left to right.

# Type:

• 10 for Key-Sequence-Number.

#### Length:

• 1.

unit8:

• 4-bit sequence number.

# 7.2.2.11 HMAC-Digest

#### **Description:**

This Attribute contains a keyed hash used for message authentication. The HMAC algorithm is defined in RFC 2104 [15]. The HMAC algorithm is specified using a generic cryptographic hash algorithm. Baseline Privacy uses a particular version of HMAC that employs the Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA-1), defined in FIPS 180-1 [12].

51

A summary of the HMAC-Digest Attribute format is shown below. The fields are transmitted from left to right.

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 Type = 11 | Length | String ...

#### Type:

• 11 for HMAC-Digest.

### Length:

• 20-octets.

# String:

• A 160-bit (20 octet) keyed SHA hash.

# 7.2.2.12 SAID

#### **Description:**

This Attribute contains a 14-bit Security Association ID (SAID) used by Baseline Privacy Plus as the security association identifier. The two high-order bits will be set to zero. Note that a CM's primary BPI+ SAID is equal to that CM's Primary SID.

# Type:

• 12 for SAID.

#### Length:

• 2.

#### unit16:

• 16-bit quantity representing a SAID.

# 7.2.2.13 TEK-Parameters

#### **Description:**

This Attribute is a compound attribute, consisting of a collection of sub-attributes. These sub-attributes represent all security parameters relevant to a particular generation of a SAID's TEK.

52

A summary of the TEK-Parameters Attribute format is shown below. The fields are transmitted from left to right.

#### Type:

• 13 for TEK-Parameters.

## Length:

• 33.

#### **Compound:**

The Compound field contains the following sub-Attributes.

# Table 7.19: TEK-Parameters Sub-Attributes

Attribute	Contents								
TEK	TEK, encrypted (two-key triple DES-EDE mode) with the KEK								
Key-Lifetime	TEK Remaining Lifetime								
Key-Sequence-Number	TEK Sequence Number								
CBC-IV	Cipher Block Chaining (CBC) Initialization Vector								

# 7.2.2.14 CBC-IV

#### **Description:**

This Attribute contains a 64-bit (8-octet) value specifying a Cipher Block Chaining (CBC) Initialization Vector.

A summary of the HMAC-Digest Attribute format is shown below. The fields are transmitted from left to right.

#### Type:

• 15 for CBC-IV.

# Length:

• 8 octets.

## String:

• A 64-bit quantity representing a DES-CBC initialization vector.

# 7.2.2.15 Error-Code

### **Description:**

This Attribute contains a one-octet error code providing further information about an Authorization Reject, Key Reject, Authorization Invalid, or TEK Invalid.

53

A summary of the Error-Code Attribute format is shown below. The fields are transmitted from left to right.

#### Type:

• 16 for Error-Code.

# Length:

• 1.

#### unit8:

- 1-octet error code.
- A CMTS MUST include the Error-Code Attribute in all Authorization Reject, Authorization Invalid, Key Reject, TEK Invalid, and SA-MAP Reject messages. Table 7.20 lists code values for use with this Attribute. The CMTS MUST employ the nonzero error codes list below for SA-MAP Reject messages. The CMTS MAY employ the nonzero error codes listed below for the other BPI+ message types; it MAY, however, return a code value of zero (0). Error code values other than those defined in table 7.20 MUST be ignored. Returning a code value of zero sends no additional failure information to the CM; for security reasons, this may be desirable.

Table 7.20: Error-Code Attribute Code Values

Error Code	Messages	Description
0	all	no information
1	Auth Reject, Auth Invalid	Unauthorized CM
2	Auth Reject, Key Reject	Unauthorized SAID
3	Auth Invalid	Unsolicited
4	Auth Invalid, TEK Invalid	Invalid Key Sequence Number
5	Auth Invalid	Message (Key Request) authentication failure
6	Auth Reject	Permanent Authorization Failure
7	Map Reject	not authorized for requested downstream traffic flow
8	Map Reject	downstream traffic flow not mapped to BPI+ SAID
9	Auth Reject	Time of day not acquired

- Error code 6, Permanent Authorization Failure, is used to indicate a number of different error conditions affecting the BPKM authorization exchange. These include:
  - an unknown manufacturer; i.e. the CMTS does not have the CA certificate belonging to the issuer of a CM certificate;
  - CM certificate has an invalid signature;
  - ASN.1 parsing failure during verification of CM certificate;
  - CM certificate is on the 'hot list';

- inconsistencies between certificate data and data in accompanying BPKM attributes;
- CM and CMTS have incompatible security capabilities.
- Their common property is that the failure condition is considered permanent: any re-attempts at authorization would continue to result in Authorization Rejects. Details about the cause of a Permanent Authorization Failure MAY be reported to the CM in an optional Display-String Attribute that may accompany the Error-Code Attribute in Authorization Reject messages. The CMTS SHOULD provide the capability to administratively control whether additional detail is sent to the CM. The CMTS MAY log these Authorization failures, or even trap then to an SNMP manager.

54

# 7.2.2.16 Vendor-Defined

The Vendor-Defined Attribute is a compound attribute whose first sub-attribute MUST be the Manufacturer-ID Attribute. Subsequent Attribute(s) are user defined, with Type values as-signed by the vendor identified by the previous Manufacturer-ID Attribute.

# Type:

• 127 for Vendor-Defined.

## Length:

•  $\geq 6.$ 

#### **Compound:**

• The first sub-attribute MUST be Manufacturer-ID. Subsequent attributes can include both universal Types (i.e. defined within the present document) and vendor-defined Types, specific to the vendor identified in the preceding Manufacturer-ID sub-attribute.

# 7.2.2.17 CA-Certificate

#### **Description:**

This Attribute is a string attribute containing an X.509 CA Certificate, as defined in ITU-T Recommendation X.509 [22].

A summary of the CA-Certificate Attribute format is shown below. The fields are transmitted from left to right.

0		1	2	3
0 1	23456789	0 1 2 3 4 5	6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3	3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1
+-+-	+-	-+-+-+-+-+-+	+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-	-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+
	Type = 17	Leng	gth	String
+-+-	+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+	-+-+-+-+-+-+	+-+-+-+-+-+-+-	+-+-+-+++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++

# Type:

• 17 for CA-Certificate.

#### Length:

 Variable. Length MUST NOT cause resulting MAC management message to exceed the maximum allowed size. String:

• X.509 CA Certificate (DER-encoded ASN.1).

# 7.2.2.18 CM-Certificate

## **Description:**

This Attribute is a string attribute containing a cable modem's X.509 User Certificate, as defined in ITU-T Recommendation X.509 [22].

A summary of the CM-Certificate Attribute format is shown below. The fields are transmitted from left to right.

55

#### Type:

• 18 for CM-Certificate.

# Length:

• Variable. Length MUST NOT cause resulting MAC management message to exceed the maximum allowed size.

# String:

• X.509 User Certificate (DER-encoded ASN.1).

# 7.2.2.19 Security-Capabilities

# **Description:**

The Security-Capabilities Attribute is a compound attribute whose sub-attributes identify the version of BPI+ a CM supports and the cryptographic suite(s) a CM supports.

0										1										2										3	
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	б	7	8	9	0	1
+-	+	+	+	+ - +	+ - +	+ - +	+-+	4	+ - +	+ - +	+ - +	+ - +	+	+ - +	+	+ - +	+ - +	+ - +	+ - +	+	+	+ - 4	+ - +	+ - +	+ - +	+	+ - +	+ - +	+ - +	+	+-+
Ι	T	ype	e :	= 1	19		I								Le	eng	gtł	ı							C	Cor	npo	our	nd	•	••
+-	+	+	+	+ - +	+ - +	+ - +	+ - +		+ +	+-+	+ - +	+-+	+	+-+	+	+ - +	+-+	+ - +	+-+	+	+	+	+ - +	+-+	+-+	+	+-+	+ - +	+ - +	+	+-+

#### Type:

• 19 for Security-Capabilities.

# Length:

• <u>≥</u>9.

# **Compound:**

• The Compound field contains the following sub-Attributes.

56

Attribute	Contents
Cryptographic-Suite-List	list of supported cryptographic suites
BPI-Version	version of BPI+ supported

# 7.2.2.20 Cryptographic-Suite

# **Description:**

0	1	2		3
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	7 8 9 0 1 2 3	4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	3901
+-	-+-+-+-+-+-+	-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-++++++++	+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-	-+-+-+
Type = 20		Length	unit1	16
+-	-+-+-+-+-+-+	-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-+-++++++++	+-	-+-+-+
unit16				
+-	-+			

# Type:

• 20 for Cryptographic-Suite.

#### Length:

• 2.

# Unit16:

• A 16-bit integer identifying a pairing of a data encryption algorithm (encoded in the left-most, most significant, byte) and a data authentication algorithm (encoded in the right-most, least significant, byte). Currently, 56-bit and 40-bit DES are the only algorithms specified for use within Data Over Cable System security, and neither are paired with a data authentication algorithm.

# Table 7.22: Data encryption algorithm identifiers

Value	Description
0	Reserved
1	CBC-Mode, 56-bit DES
2	CBC-Mode, 40-bit DES
3 to 255	Reserved

# Table 7.23: Data authentication algorithm identifiers

Value	Description
0	No Data Authentication
1 to 255	Reserved

# Table 7.24: Cryptographic-suite attribute values

Value	Description
256 (0x0100 hex)	CBC-Mode 56-bit DES & no data authentication
512 (0x0200 hex)	CBC-Mode 40-bit DES & no data authentication
all remaining values	Reserved

# 7.2.2.21 Cryptographic-Suite-List

# **Description:**

# Type:

• 21 for Cryptographic-Suite-List.

# Length:

•  $2 \times n$ , where n=number of cryptographic suites listed.

# Unit8:

• A list of byte pairs identifying a collection of cryptographic suites. Each byte pair represents a supported cryptographic suite, with an encoding identical to the value field of the Cryptographic-Suite Attribute (see clause 7.2.2.20). The CMTS MUST NOT interpret the relative ordering of byte pairs in the list as a CM's preferences amongst the cryptographic suites it supports.

57

# 7.2.2.22 BPI-Version

# **Description:**

0		1	2		3
0 1 2 3	456789	0 1 2 3 4 5	5678901	2 3 4 5 6 7	8901
+-+-+-+-+	-+-+-+-+-+-	+-+-+-+-+-	-+-+-+-+-+-+	-+-+-+-+-+-	+-+-+-+
Туре	e = 22	Ler	ngth	un:	it8
+-+-+-+-+	-+-+-+-+-	+-+-+-+-+-	-+-+-+-+-+-+	-+-+-+-+-+-	+-+-+-+

# Type:

• 22 for BPI-Version.

## Length:

• 1.

# Unit8:

• A 1-octet code identifying a version of Baseline Privacy security.

# Table 7.25: BPI-version attribute values

Value	Description
0	Reserved
1	BPI+
2-255	Reserved

# 7.2.2.23 SA-Descriptor

# **Description:**

The SA-Descriptor Attribute is a compound attribute whose sub-attributes describe the properties of a BPI+ Security Association. These properties include the SAID, the SA type, and the cryptographic suite employed within the SA.

58

# Type:

• 23 for SA-Descriptor.

# Length:

• 14.

#### **Compound:**

• The Compound field contains the following sub-Attributes.

# Table 7.26: SA-descriptor sub-attributes

Attribute	Contents
SAID	Security Association ID
SA-Type	Type of SA
Cryptographic-Suite	pairing of data encryption and data authentication algorithms employed within the SA

# 7.2.2.24 SA-Type

# **Description:**

Identifies Type of SA. BPI+ defines three SA types: Primary, Static, Dynamic.

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 Type = 24 | Length | unit8 |

# Type:

• 24 for SA-Type.

#### Length:

• 1.

# Unit8:

• A 1-octet code identifying the value of SA-type as defined in table 7.27.

Value	Description
0	Primary
1	Static
2	Dynamic
3-127	Reserved
128-255	Vendor-specific

Table 7.27: SA-Type Attribute Values

# 7.2.2.25 SA-Query

# **Description:**

Compound Attribute used in SA Map Request to specify mapping query arguments. Query arguments include the query type and any addressing attributes particular to that query type - the addressing attributes identify a particular downstream traffic flow that a SA mapping is being requested for. Currently, the only query type specified is IP-Multicast, and the addressing argument associated with that type is an IP group address.

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 5 6 7 8 8 9 0 1 5 6 7 8 8 9 0 1 1 5 6 7 8 8 9 0 1 1 5 6 7 8 8 9 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

#### Type:

• 25 for SA-Query.

#### Length:

• 11.

#### **Compound:**

• The Compound field contains the following sub-Attributes.

#### Table 7.28: SA-query sub-attributes

Attribute	Contents		
SA-Query-Type	Type of Query		
	required if SA-Query-Type = IP-Multicast; contains an IP group address whose SA mapping is being requested.		

# 7.2.2.26 SA-Query-Type

#### **Description:**

This Attribute identifies an IP address used to identify an encrypted IP traffic flow. It is used, for example, to specify an IP multicast group address.

A summary of the IP-Address Attribute format is shown below. The fields are transmitted from left to right.

• 26 for SA-Query-Type.

# Length:

• 1.

# Unit8:

• A 1-octet code identifying the value of SA-Query-Type as defined in table 7.29.

Value	Description	
0	Reserved	
1	IP Multicast	
2-127	Reserved	
128-255	Vendor-specific	

#### Table 7.29: SA-Query-Type Attribute Values

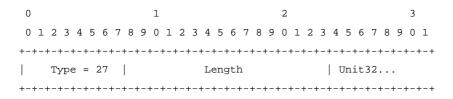
60

# 7.2.2.27 IP-Address

#### **Description:**

This Attribute identifies an IP address used to identify an encrypted IP traffic flow. It is used, for example, to specify an IP multicast group address.

A summary of the IP-Address Attribute format is shown below. The fields are transmitted from left to right.



## Type:

• 27 for IP-Address.

# Length:

• 4.

#### Unit32:

• Contains the 32-bit unsigned integer (in network-byte order) representing an IP address.

# 7.2.2.28 Download-Parameters

#### **Description:**

This attribute is used in the CM Code File defined in clause D.3.1. This attribute is a compound attribute, consisting of a collection of sub-attributes.

Sub-attribute MAY include one or both of the following attribute(s) in this order.

- RSA-Public-Key (zero or one);
- CA-Certificate (zero, one or more).

• 28.

# Length:

•  $\geq 0.$ 

# 8 Dynamic SA mapping

# 8.1 Introduction

BPI+ Dynamic Security Associations (Dynamic SAs), introduced in clause 5.1.3, are SAs that a CMTS establishes and eliminates, dynamically, in response to its enabling and disabling of specific downstream traffic flows. These traffic flows may be initiated by the actions of:

61

- a CPE (Customer Premise Equipment) device attached to one of the CMTS's client CMs;
- an application server within the head end;
- an OSS system; or
- other unspecified mechanisms.

Regardless of what triggers the establishment of a Dynamic SA within the CMTS, client CMs need a mechanism for learning the mapping of a particular BPI+-protected downstream traffic flow to that flow's dynamically assigned BPI+ Security Association (and that SA's corresponding SAID).

The SA Mapping state machine, defined in this clause, specifies how cable modems query a CMTS for the mapping of downstream traffic flows to Dynamic SAs. The state machine controls the transmission of SA Map Request messages to a CMTS.

Data Over Cable System 1.1 currently employs Dynamic SAs for a single service type: encrypting, and thus restricting access to, downstream IP multicast traffic. A CMTS can establish or eliminate Dynamic SAs in response to changes in IP group membership of downstream CPE devices. Data Over Cable System 1.1's IGMP management mechanisms (ES 201 488-2 [2], clause 5.3.1) can trigger the establishment of Dynamic SAs in the CMTS. IGMP management mechanisms in the CM MUST trigger BPI+ Map Request messages that query the CMTS for the mapping of an IP multicast group address to an SA.

BPI+'s SA mapping mechanism MAY map an IP multicast group to a static SA, or even to a particular CM's Primary SA; a CMTS's response to a mapping request may return any of the three types of SAs. The SA mapping mechanism, however, is the only mechanism by which a CM can learn the identity of Dynamic SAs.

Clause 8.4 will discuss in greater detail the particular use of the SA mapping mechanism to support the mapping of IP multicast traffic to Dynamic SAs. In the following two clauses, however, we focus on the more general SA mapping mechanism.

Note that future enhancements to the Data Over Cable System service specifications may define additional applications of Dynamic SAs.

# 8.2 Theory of operation

BPI+ defines three new BPKM messages to support CM querying for SA mappings: the SA Map Request, the SA Map Reply, and the SA Map Reject. A CM sends a Map Request to its CMTS to request the mapping of a known downstream flow to a SA. The Map Request carries BPI+ data attributes identifying the requesting CM and the downstream traffic flow whose SA mapping is being requested.

The CMTS may respond to a Map Request with either:

- a Map Reply, providing the CM with the requested SA mapping; or
- a Map Reject, signalling to the CM that either:
  - 1) the CM is not authorized to receive the traffic flow identified in the Map Request; or
  - 2) the requested traffic flow is not mapped to a BPI+ SA.

If the CM does not receive any of the above responses within a configurable retry timeout period, it re-sends the Map Request. If no response is received after a configurable maximum number of retries, the CM gives up.

If the CM receives a Map Reject, it ceases all further attempts to obtain the mapping. In the case where access to the downstream traffic flow is mapped to a BPI+ SA, and the requesting CM is not authorized access for that SA, the CM and its attached CPE device will be denied access because the CM cannot obtain keying material needed to decrypt the downstream traffic flows encrypted under that SA. E.g. the user may be requesting a premium service that he or she is not subscribed to. In the case where the requested traffic flow is not encrypted (i.e. it is not mapped to a SA), the unencrypted traffic will simply be forwarded to the attached CPE device. E.g. the CM makes an SA-MAP request for the All-Hosts multicast address. Since multicast packets addressed to the All-Hosts multicast address are necessary for the proper operation of IGMP, there is no need to encrypt these packets.

If the CM receives a Map Reply identifying the BPI+ SA associated with the requested downstream traffic flow, the CM launches a TEK state machine for the SA, provided both:

- 1) the CM is not already running a TEK state machine for that SA; and
- 2) the CM supports the cryptographic suite identified in the Map Reply along with the Security Association ID (SAID) value.

The CM may already be running a TEK state machine if the mapped SA is:

- a Dynamic SA mapped to another protected traffic flow the CM already has access to;
- the requesting CM's Primary SA; or
- a Static SA the CM learned about in a previously received Authorization Reply.

Note that a CMTS MAY assign multiple traffic flows (i.e. IP multicast addresses) to the same SA. If more than one downstream traffic flow is being encrypted under the same Dynamic SA, a CM may already be running a TEK state machine for the SA identified in the Map Reply. Note also that the SA mapping returned in the Map Reply need not be a Dynamic SA: the requested traffic flow may be mapped to the CM's Primary SA or a Static SA.

The Map Reply includes an SA-Descriptor Attribute which identifies both a SAID and the cryptographic suite employed within the SA. As is the case with Static SAs, the selection of a Dynamic SA's cryptographic suite is typically made independent of the requesting CM's cryptographic capabilities. Thus, a CMTS MAY respond to a Map Request with an SA (either Static or Dynamic) that employs a cryptographic suite the requesting CM does not support. The CM MUST NOT start TEK state machines for Static or Dynamic SAs whose cryptographic suites the CM does not support. (A Primary SA, however, must employ a cryptographic suite that is supported by the CM to which the SA belongs).

The TEK state machine controls the retrieval of the mapped SA's keying material. The CM will send Key Requests for the SA; the CMTS may respond to these key requests with:

- a Key Reply, providing the CM with the requested keying material;
- a Key Reject, signalling to the CM it is not authorized for the requested mapped SAID;
- an Authorization Invalid, signalling to the CM that authentication of the Key Request message failed.

The receipt of a Key Reject forces the termination of the TEK state machine.

Note that there are two mechanisms for the CMTS to tell a client CM it is not authorized to access a particular traffic flow: responding to a Map Request with a Map Reject, and responding to a Key Request with a Key Reject. It is implementation dependent whether a CMTS checks a CM's authorization status prior to responding to a Map Request. By doing the check during the mapping exchange, a CM will be prevented from needlessly launching a TEK state machine and sending a Key Request for a SAID it is not authorized for.

# 8.3 SA mapping state model

The SA Mapping state model specifies the mechanism by which a CM learns the mapping of a traffic flow to a dynamic SA.

63

A state machine is started when, within the CM, an event, external to the SA Mapping State Model, triggers the need for a traffic-flow-to-SA mapping (see example). This external event generates an internal 'Map' event in the SA Mapping state machine.

EXAMPLE: When a CM installs the permit filters for an IP multicast group as a result of the CM's IGMP management mechanisms.

The state machine is terminated if the CM receives no response after sending the maximum number of retries, or when the CM determines it no longer requires the mapped SA's keying material. In this later case, an external event generates an internal 'Unmap' event in the SA Mapping state machine, forcing its termination. Thus, the state machine can be used not only to obtain the required mapping information, but also to track the period over which an external application using the SA Mapping mechanism (e.g. IGMP management) requires that mapping. Linkage of the Unmap event to an external event, and hence implementation of the Unmap event, is OPTIONAL.

As with the BPI+ Authorization and TEK state machines, the SA Mapping state machine is presented in graphical format, as a state flow model (see figure 8.1), and in a tabular format, as a state transition matrix (see table 9.1). And as with the previously defined state machines, the state transition matrix MUST be used as the definitive specification of protocol actions associated with each state transition.

If, through the SA Mapping mechanism, a CM learns it requires access to a dynamic SA's keying material, it must establish a TEK state machine for that dynamic SA. While the Authorization state machine controls the establishment and termination of TEK state machines associated with the Primary and any Static SAIDs, it does not control the establishment and termination of TEK state machines associated with Dynamic SAs. CMs MUST implement the necessary logic to establish and terminate TEK state machines for the Dynamic SAs learned of through the SA Mapping mechanism. The BPI+ specification, however, does not define how CMs should manage their Dynamic SA's TEK state machines.

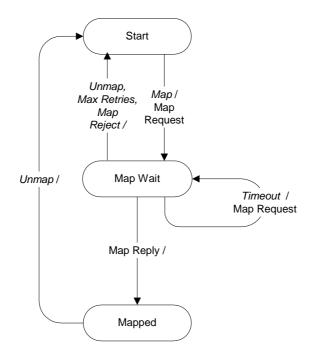


Figure 8.1: SA mapping state machine flow diagram

State Event or Rcvd	Start	(B) Map Wait	(C) Mapped
Message		Wall	
(1)	Мар		
Мар	Wait		
(2)		Start	Start
Unmap			
(3)		Mapped	
Map Reply			
(4)		Start	
Map Reject			
(5)		Мар	
Timeout		Wait	
(6)		Start	
Max Retries			

# Table 8.1: Dynamic SAID state transition matrix

64

# 8.3.1 States

# 8.3.1.1 Start

The initial state of the finite state machine.

# 8.3.1.2 Map Wait

The CM has sent the CMTS a Map Request and is waiting for a response.

# 8.3.1.3 Mapped

The CM has received a Map Reply, learned the requested SA mapping.

# 8.3.2 Messages

# 8.3.2.1 SA Map Request (Map Request)

Sent by CM to CMTS to request a SA mapping.

# 8.3.2.2 SA Map Reply (Map Reply)

Positive CMTS response to Map Request containing the requested SA mapping.

# 8.3.2.3 SA Map Reject (Map Reject)

Negative CMTS response to CM's Map Request; signals to the CM that either:

- 1) the CM is not authorized access to the traffic flow identified in the Map Request; or
- 2) the requested traffic flow is not mapped to a BPI+ SA.

# 8.3.3 Events

# 8.3.3.1 Map

Triggers the start of the SA Mapping state machine. The Map event is linked to a CM event external to the BPI+ protocol.

# 8.3.3.2 Unmap

Triggers the termination of the SA Mapping state machine. The Unmap event is linked to a CM event external to the BPI+ protocol. Implementation of the Unmap event is OPTIONAL.

65

# 8.3.3.3 Map Reply

Cable modem receives a SA Map Reply message.

# 8.3.3.4 Map Reject

Cable modem receives a SA Map Reject message.

# 8.3.3.5 Timeout

Cable modem has timed out waiting for a response to an outstanding SA Map Request message.

# 8.3.3.6 Max Retries

Cable modem has sent the maximum number of retries and not received a response.

# 8.3.4 Parameters

All configuration parameter values are specified in the TFTP-downloaded parameter file (see annex A).

# 8.3.4.1 SA Map Wait Timeout

Timeout period between sending SA Map Request messages from SA Wait state. See clause A.1.1.1.8.

# 8.3.4.2 SA Map Max Retries

Maximum number of times CM retries SA Map Request before giving up.

# 8.3.5 Actions

Actions taken in association with state transitions are listed by <event/rcvd message> - <state> below:

- **1-A** Start  $(Map) \rightarrow$  Map Wait
  - send SA Map Request
  - set Map Request retry timer to SA Map Wait Timeout
  - set Map Retry Count to 0
- **2-B** Map Wait  $(Unmap) \rightarrow \text{Start}$ 
  - clear Map Request retry timer
  - terminate SA Mapping state machine
- **2-C** Mapped (*Unmap*)  $\rightarrow$  Start
  - terminate SA Mapping state machine
- **3-B** Map Wait (*Map Reply*)  $\rightarrow$  Mapped
  - clear Map Request retry timer

**4-B** Map Wait (Map Reject)  $\rightarrow$  Start

- clear Map Request retry timer
- terminate SA Mapping state machine

**5-B** Map Wait (*Timeout*)  $\rightarrow$  Map Wait

- send Map Request
- set Map Request retry timer to SA Map Wait Timeout
- increment Map Retry Count
- if Map Retry Count > SA Map Max Retries, generate Max Retries event

**6-B** Map Wait (*Max Retries*)  $\rightarrow$  Start

terminate SA Mapping state machine

# 8.4 IP multicast traffic and dynamic SAs

Data Over Cable System 1.1 ES 201 488-2 [2] specifies rules for the management of IGMP traffic in the CM and CMTS. These rules are designed to control the flow of IP multicast traffic across the cable network and across the CM/CPE interface so that:

- a CMTS only forwards downstream traffic associated with an IP multicast group if a CPE device, attached to one of the CMTS's client CMs, is a member of that group; and
- a CM only forwards across its CPE interface downstream traffic associated with an IP multicast group if an attached CPE device is a member of that group.

BPI+, operating in conjunction with the Data Over Cable System 1.1 RFI, controls access to IP multicast traffic flows by encrypting them and controlling the distribution of the multicast keying material required to decrypt the flows.

A CMTS may map downstream multicast flows to any of BPI+'s three classes of Security Associations: Primary, Static or Dynamic. If an IP multicast group's traffic is mapped to a Primary SA, only the single CM belonging to that SA can access that group. If mapped to a Static or Dynamic SA, then multiple CMs may access that group, although a CMTS may restrict a Static or Dynamic SA to a single CM.

When a Data Over Cable System 1.1 CM enables downstream forwarding of an IP multicast group (in response to receiving a Membership Report on its CPE interface), the CM MUST determine whether the IP multicast group's downstream traffic is encrypted and the BPI+ SAID associated with the encrypted downstream multicast flow. Once the CM has the associated SAID, it can launch a TEK state machine to retrieve the SA's keying material.

The CM uses BPI+'s SA Mapping mechanism to request from its CMTS the SA mapping for an IP multicast group it just joined. The SA Mapping state machine's *Map* event is triggered by the enabling of RF-to-CPE forwarding of the IP multicast group in the CM (see clause 5.3.1.2 and annex L of ES 201 488-2 [2]). A SA Map Reply informs the CM that the joined group is mapped to a BPI+ SA. If the group is mapped to the CM's Primary SA, the CM already has the required keying material. If the group is mapped to a Static or Dynamic SA, the CM determines whether it is already running a TEK state machine for that SA; if not it starts one.

The SA Mapping state machine defines an OPTIONAL Unmap event which terminates the SA Mapping state machine and MAY be used to indicate the CM no longer requires the mapped SA's keying material. In the case of the mapping of IP multicast traffic to a SA, the Unmap event could indicate that the CM has removed all IP multicast permit filters associated with IP multicast groups mapped to the SA in question. Thus, the SA Mapping state machine MAY be used to track the necessity of a CM to maintain keying material for a Dynamic SA mapped to one or more IP multicast groups.

TEK state machines corresponding to Primary and Static SAIDs are stopped according to the termination conditions defined in the Authorization and TEK state machines.

# 9 Key usage

# 9.1 CMTS

After a CM completes Data Over Cable System MAC Registration, it initiates an Authorization exchange with its CMTS. The CMTS's first receipt of an Authorization Request message from the unauthorized CM initiates the activation of a new Authorization Key (AK), which the CMTS sends back to the requesting CM in an Authorization Reply message. This AK will remain active until it expires according to its predefined lifetime, *Authorization Key Lifetime*, a CMTS system configuration parameter (see clause A.2).

67

The CMTS MUST use keying material derived from the CM's Authorization Key for:

- verifying the HMAC-Digest in Key Requests received from that CM;
- encrypting (EDE mode two-key triple DES) the TEK in the Key Replies it sends to that CM (TEK is a sub-attribute of a Key Reply's TEK-Parameters Attribute);
- calculating the HMAC-Digests it writes into Key Replies, Key Rejects and TEK Invalids sent to that CM.

The CMTS must always be prepared to send a CM an AK upon request. The CMTS MUST be able to support up to two simultaneously active AKs for each client CM. The CMTS has two active AKs during an Authorization Key transition period; the two active keys have overlapping lifetimes.

An Authorization Key transition period begins when the CMTS receives an Authorization Request from a CM and the CMTS has a single active AK for that CM. In response to this Authorization Request, the CMTS activates a second AK, which it sends back to the requesting CM in an Authorization Reply. The CMTS MUST set the active lifetime of this second AK to be the remaining lifetime of the first AK, plus the predefined *Authorization Key Lifetime*; thus, the second, 'newer' key will remain active for one *Authorization Key Lifetime* beyond the expiration of the first, 'older' key. The key transition period will end with the expiration of the older key. This is depicted in the top half of figure 9.1.

The Authorization Key lifetime a CMTS reports in an Authorization reply MUST reflect, as accurately as an implementation permits, the remaining lifetimes of AK at the time the reply message is sent.

As long as the CMTS is in the midst of a CM's Authorization Key transition period, and thus is holding two active Authorization Keys for that CM, it will respond to Authorization Requests with the newer of the two active keys. Once the older key expires, an Authorization Request will trigger the activation of a new AK, and the start of a new key transition period.

If a CM fails to reauthorize before the expiration of its most current AK, the CMTS will hold no active Authorization keys for the CM and will consider the CM *unauthorized*. A CMTS MUST remove from its keying tables all TEKs associated with an unauthorized CM's Primary SA.

A CMTS MUST use a CM's active AK(s) to verify the HMAC-digest in Key Requests received from the CM. If a CMTS receives a Key Request while in an AK transition period, and the accompanying AK Key Sequence Number indicates the Request was authenticated with the newer of the two AKs, the CMTS identifies this as an *implicit acknowledgment* that the CM has obtained the newer of the CM's two active AKs.

A CMTS MUST use an active AK when calculating HMAC-Digests in Key Replies, Key Rejects and TEK Invalids, and when encrypting the TEK in Key Replies. When sending Key Replies, Key Rejects or TEK Invalids within a key transition period (i.e. when two active AKs are available), if the newer key has been implicitly acknowledged, the CMTS MUST use the newer of the two active AKs; if the newer key has not been implicitly acknowledged, the CMTS MUST use the older of the two active AKs.

The upper half of figure 9.1 illustrates the CMTS's policy regarding its use of AKs.

The CMTS MUST maintain two sets of active traffic encryption keys (and their associated CBC initialization vectors) per SAID. They correspond to two successive generations of keying material, and have overlapping lifetimes. The newer TEK MUST have a key sequence number one greater than (modulo 16) that of the older TEK. Each TEK becomes active half way through the lifetime of its predecessor, and expires half way through the lifetime of its successor. Once a TEK's lifetime expires, the TEK becomes inactive and MUST no longer be used.

The CMTS transitions between the two active TEKs differently depending on whether the TEK is used for downstream or upstream traffic. For each of its SAIDs, the CMTS MUST transition between active TEKs according to the following rules:

68

- The CMTS MUST use the older of the two active TEKs for encrypting downstream traffic. At expiration of the older TEK, the CMTS MUST immediately transition to using the newer TEK for encryption.
- For decryption of upstream traffic, a transition period is defined that begins once the CMTS has sent the newer TEK to a CM within a Key Reply Message. The upstream transition period begins from the time the CMTS sends the newer TEK in a Key Reply Message and concludes once the older TEK expires. While in the transition period, the CMTS MUST be able to decrypt upstream frames using either the older or newer TEK.

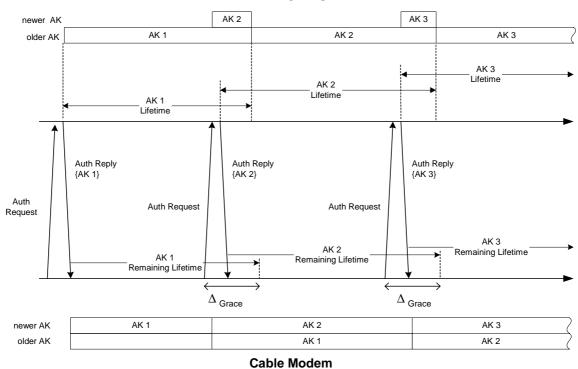
Note that the CMTS encrypts with a given TEK for only the second half of that TEK's total lifetime. The CMTS is able, however, to decrypt with a TEK for the TEK's entire lifetime.

The KEY\_SEQ field in the Baseline Privacy EH element identifies which of the two TEKs the upstream frame's packet data was encrypted with. The TOGGLE bit in the Privacy EH element, which is equal to the least significant bit of the KEY\_SEQ field, can be used by the CMTS in identifying the encrypting TEK.

The upper half of figure 9.2 illustrates this CMTS's management of a BPI+ Security Association's TEKs.

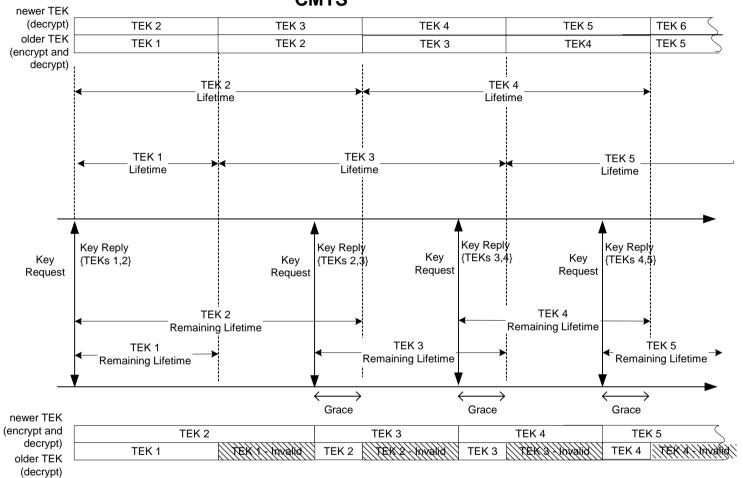
The CMTS is responsible for maintaining keying information for both primary and multicast SAIDs in the above manner. The Baseline Privacy Key Management protocol defined in the present document describes a mechanism for synchronizing this keying information between a CMTS and its client CMs. It is the responsibility of the CM to update its keys in a timely fashion; the CMTS will transition to a new downstream encryption key regardless of whether a client CM has retrieved a copy of that TEK.

The Key Replies sent by a CMTS contain TEK parameters (the TEK itself, a key lifetime, a key sequence number and a CBC IV) for the two active TEKs. The key lifetimes a CMTS reports in a Key Reply MUST reflect, as accurately as an implementation permits, the remaining lifetimes of these TEKs at the time the Key Reply message is sent.



CMTS

Figure 9.1: Authorization key management in CMTS and CM



CMTS

Cable Modem

Figure 9.2: TEK management in CMTS and CM

# 9.2 Cable Modem (CM)

The CM is responsible for sustaining authorization with its CMTS and maintaining an active Authorization Key. A CM MUST be prepared to use its two most recently obtained AKs.

70

AKs have a limited lifetime and must be periodically refreshed. A CM refreshes its Authorization Key by re-issuing an Authorization Request to the CMTS. The Authorization state machine (see clause 7.1.2) manages the scheduling of Authorization Requests for refreshing AKs.

A CM's Authorization state machine schedules the beginning of reauthorization a configurable length of time (the *Authorization Grace Time*) before the CM's latest AK is scheduled to expire. The Authorization Grace Time is configured to provide a CM with an authorization retry period that is sufficiently long to allow for system delays and provide adequate time for the CM to successfully complete an Authorization exchange before the expiration of its most current AK.

Note that the CMTS does not require knowledge of the Authorization Grace Time. The CMTS, however, tracks the lifetime of its Authorization Keys and MUST deactivate a key once it has expired.

A cable modem MUST use the newer of its two most recent Authorization Keys when calculating the HMAC-Digests it attaches to Key Requests. It MUST be able to use either of its two most recent AKs to authenticate Key Replies, Key Rejects or TEK Invalids, and to decrypt a Key Reply's encrypted TEK. The CM uses the accompanying AK Key Sequence Number to determine which of the two AKs to use.

The lower half of figure 9.1 illustrates a CM's maintenance and usage of its Authorization Keys.

A CM MUST be capable of maintaining two successive sets of traffic keying material per authorized SAID. Through operation of its TEK state machines, a CM attempts to always maintain a SAID's two most recent sets of traffic keying material.

For each of its authorized SAIDs, the cable modem:

- MUST use the newer of its two TEKs to encrypt newly received upstream traffic. Traffic already queued up MAY use either TEK (in no specific order) for a brief period of time covering the transition from the old to the new key.
- MUST be able to decrypt downstream traffic encrypted with either of the TEKs.

The KEY\_SEQ field in the Baseline Privacy EH element identifies the key sequence number of the TEK used to encrypt the PDU's packet data. The TOGGLE bit in the Privacy EH element, which is equal to the least significant bit of the KEY\_SEQ field, assists in distinguishing between two successive key generations.

# 9.3 Authentication of Data Over Cable System v1.1 dynamic service requests

If a Data Over Cable System 1.1 CM is configured to run BPI+, the Data Over Cable System v1.1 RFI specification ES 201 488-2 [2] requires CM and CMTS to include HMAC-Digests in all Dynamic Service Addition Requests (DSA-REQs), Dynamic Service Change Requests (DSC-REQs) and Dynamic Service Deletion Requests (DSD-REQs) they send to one another.

These Dynamic Service HMAC-Digests are keyed with the BPI+ message authentication keys, i.e. the message authentication keys derived from the BPI+ Authorization Key. CMs and CMTSs MUST use the current message authentication keys when generating and validating the HMAC-Digests contained in Dynamic Service Requests.

# 10 Cryptographic Methods

This clause specifies cryptographic algorithms and key sizes BPI+ uses.

# 10.1 Packet Data Encryption

Baseline Privacy Plus MUST use the Cipher Block Chaining (CBC) mode of the US Data Encryption Standard (DES) algorithm [8], [9], [10] to encrypt the Packet Data field RF MAC Packet Data PDU Frames and the Fragmentation Payload and Fragmentation CRC Fields in MAC Fragmentation Frames.

71

BPI+ implementations running on Data Over Cable System 1.1 hardware (the predominant hardware/software configuration) MUST support 56-bit DES and MAY support 40-bit DES.

BPI+ supports 40-bit DES principally to permit interoperability with 40-bit DOCSIS 1.0 hardware upgraded to run BPI+. 40-bit DES is identical to 56-bit DES, with the exception that 16 bits of the 56-bit DES key are set to known, fixed values. If a CM or CMTS is running the optional 40-bit DES, it MUST mask off (to zero) the sixteen left-most bits of any 56-bit DES key prior to running encryption/decryption operations. Note that the masked bits are the sixteen left-most bits that would be present AFTER the removal of every eighth bit from the 64-bit TEK (i.e. the so-called parity bits). Data Over Cable System 1.1 and 56-bit DOCSIS 1.0 hardware running BPI+ MAY implement 40-bit DES key masking in software.

CBC MUST be initialized with an initialization vector that is provided, along with other SAID key material, in a CMTS's Key Reply. Chaining is done block to block within a frame and reinitialized on a frame basis in order to make the system more robust to potential frame loss.

Residual termination block processing MUST be used to encrypt the final block of plaintext when the final block is less than 64 bits. Given a final block having n bits, where n is less than 64, the next-to-last ciphertext block is DES encrypted a second time, using the ECB mode, and the least significant n bits of the result are exclusive ORed with the final n bits of the payload to generate the short final cipher block. In order for the receiver to decrypt the short final cipher block, the receiver DES encrypts the next-to-last ciphertext block, using the ECB mode, and exclusive ORs the left-most n bits with the short final cipher block in order to recover the short final cleartext block. This encryption procedure is depicted in figure 9.4 of [25].

In the special case when the frame's to-be-encrypted plaintext is less than 64 bits, the initialization vector MUST be DES encrypted, and the left-most n bits of the resulting ciphertext corresponding to the number of bits of the payload MUST be exclusive ORed with the n bits of the payload to generate the short cipher block.

NOTE: This method of encrypting short payloads is vulnerable to attack: EXORing two sets of ciphertext encrypted in the above manner under the same set of keying material will yield the EXOR of the corresponding sets of plaintext. In the case of Packet Data PDUs Frame's, however, this is not an issue since all Frame's carrying protected user data will contain at least 20 bytes of IP header. In the case of Fragmentation Frames, a short frame carrying less than 8 bytes (64 bits) of ciphertext is possible; however, the final four bytes would be the encrypted Fragmentation CRC, and the three or fewer bytes before the encrypted Fragmentation CRC would be the encrypted Packet Data CRC.

# 10.2 Encryption of TEK

The CMTS encrypts the value fields of the TEK in the Key Reply messages it sends to client CMs. This field is encrypted using two-key triple DES in the Encrypt-Decrypt-Encrypt (EDE) mode [25]:

encryption:  $C = E_{k1}[D_{k2}[E_{k1}[P]]]$ 

decryption:  $P = D_{k1}[E_{k2}[D_{k1}[C]]]$ 

P = Plaintext 64-bit TEK

C = Ciphertext 64-bit TEK

k1 = left-most 64 bits of the 128-bit KEK

k2 = right-most 64 bits of the 128-bit KEK

E[] = 56-bit DES ECB (electronic code book) mode encryption

D[] = 56-bit DES ECB decryption

Clause 8.1 describes how the KEK is derived from the Authorization key.

# 10.3 HMAC-Digest algorithm

The keyed hash employed by the HMAC-Digest Attribute MUST use the HMAC message authentication method [15] with the SHA-1 hash algorithm [12].

72

Upstream and downstream message authentication keys are derived from the Authorization Key (see clause 8.1 for details).

# 10.4 Derivation of TEKs, KEKs and message authentication keys

The CMTS generates Authorization Keys, TEKs and IVs. A random or pseudo-random number generator MUST be used to generate Authorization Keys and TEKs. A random or pseudo-random number generator MAY also be used to generate IVs; regardless of how they are generated, IVs MUST be unpredictable. RFC 1750 [14] provides recommended practices for generating random numbers for use within cryptographic systems.

FIPS-81 [10] defines DES keys as 8-octet (64-bit) quantities where the seven most significant bits (i.e. seven left-most bits) of each octet are the independent bits of a DES key, and the least significant bit (i.e. right-most bit) of each octet is a parity bit computed on the preceding seven independent bits and adjusted so that the octet has odd parity.

The keying material for two-key triple DES consists of two distinct (single) DES keys.

BPKM does not require odd parity. The BPKM protocol generates and distributes 8-octet DES keys of arbitrary parity, and it requires that implementations ignore the value of the least significant bit of each octet.

A Key Encryption Key (KEK) and two message authentication keys are derived from a common Authorization Key. The following defines how these keys are derived:

- KEK is the Key Encryption Key used to encrypt Traffic Encryption Keys
- HMAC\_KEY\_U is the message authentication key used in upstream Key Requests
- HMAC\_KEY\_D is the message authentication key used in downstream Key Replies, Key Rejects and TEK Invalids
- SHA(x|y) denotes the result of applying the SHA function to the concatenated bit strings x and y
- Truncate(x,n) denotes the result of truncating x to its left-most n bits
- KEK = Truncate(SHA( K\_PAD | AUTH\_KEY ), 128)
- HMAC\_KEY\_U = SHA( H\_PAD\_U | AUTH\_KEY )
- HMAC\_KEY\_D = SHA( H\_PAD\_D | AUTH\_KEY )

Each \_PAD\_ is a 512 bit string:

- $K_PAD = 0x53$  repeated 64 times
- $H_PAD_U = 0x5C$  repeated 64 times
- $H_PAD_D = 0x3A$  repeated 64 times

# 10.5 Public-key encryption of authorization key

Authorization keys in Authorization Reply messages MUST be RSA public-key encrypted, using the cable modem's public key. BPI+ uses F4 (65537 decimal, or equivalently, 010001 hexadecimal) as its public exponent and a modulus length of 1 024 bits. BPI+ employs the RSAES-OAEP encryption scheme specified in version 2.0 of the PKCS#1 standard [21]. RSAES-OAEP requires the selection of: a hash function; a mask-generation function; and an encoding parameter string. The default selections specified in [21] MUST be used when encrypting the authorization key. These default selections are: SHA-1 for the hash function; MGF1 with SHA-1 for the mask-generation function; and the empty string for the encoding parameter string.

Note that Baseline Privacy [4] employed the encryption scheme described in version 1.5 of the PKCS #1 standard [19]. This is the same scheme as RSAES-PKCS1-v1\_5 in [21]. In order to maintain backwards compatibility, CMs and CMTSs MUST revert to RSAES-PKCS1-v1\_5 for encrypting the authorization key when falling back to BPI.

The Baseline Privacy [4] protocol, whose support is required in DOCSIS 1.0 CMs, specifies a modulus length of 768 bits for its RSA keys. In order to enable software upgrades of DOCSIS 1.0 CM hardware to BPI+, the BPI+ protocol MUST support 768-bit as well as 1 024-bit modulus lengths. Data Over Cable System 1.1 CMs, however, MUST employ RSA keys having a 1 024-bit modulus length. To support interoperability with the upgraded v1.0 CMs, a Data Over Cable System 1.1 CMTS's BPI+ implementation MUST support 768-bit as well as 1 024-bit modulus lengths.

# 10.6 Digital signatures

The BPI+ employs the RSA Signature Algorithm [21] with SHA-1 [13] for all three of its certificate types.

As with its RSA encryption keys, BPI+ uses F4 (65 537 decimal, 010001 hexadecimal) as the public exponent for its signing operation. The Data Over Cable System Root CA will employ a modulus length of 2 048 bits (256 octets) for signing the Manufacturer CA certificates it issues. Manufacturer CAs MUST employ signature key modulus lengths of at least 1 024 bits, and no greater than 2 048 bits.

# 10.7 Supporting alternative algorithms

The current BPI+ specification requires the use of 56-bit DES for encrypting packet data, two-key triple DES for encrypting traffic encryption keys, 1 024-bit RSA for encrypting Authorization keys, and 1 024-bit to 2 048-bit RSA for signing BPI+ X.509 certificates. The choice of key lengths and algorithms, while appropriate for current threat models and hardware capabilities, may be inappropriate in the future.

For example, it is generally agreed that DES is approaching the end of its practical usefulness as the industry standard for symmetric encryption. NIST is currently overseeing the development and adoption of a new standard encryption algorithm, commonly referred to as the Advanced Encryption Standard, or AES. Given the nature of the security services BPI+ is being asked to support (basic privacy at a level better than or equal to that possible over dedicated wires, and conditional access to RF data transport services) as well as the protocol's flexible key management policy (i.e. setting of key lifetimes), Data Over Cable System-based service providers will be justified in the continued reliance on DES for, at least, the next five years. Nevertheless, at some future date, Data Over Cable System Cable modems will need to adopt a stronger traffic encryption algorithm, possibly AES.

Adopting a new algorithm for packet data encryption will not require a redesign of BPI+. The protocol's consistent use of Type/Length/Value encoding of BPKM attributes, MAC Header Extended Header elements, and security capabilities selection in the authorization exchange guarantee BPI+'s extensibility. In fact, changes in any of BPI+'s cryptographic algorithms, or associated key lengths, will have no impact on the overall structure and operation of the protocol.

# 11 Physical protection of keys in the CM and CMTS

BPI+ requires both CMs and CMTSs to maintain in their memory traffic encryption keys and CM Authorization Keys. A CM MUST also maintain in permanent, write-once memory an RSA key pair. Both CM and CMTS MUST deter unauthorized physical access to this keying material.

The level of physical protection of keying material BPI+ requires of CMs and CMTSs is specified in terms of the security levels defined in the FIPS 140-2 [11], Security Requirements for Cryptographic Modules, standard [11]. In particular, CMs and CMTSs MUST meet [11] Security Level 1 requirements.

74

FIPS 140-2 [11] Security Level 1 requires minimal physical protection through the use of production-grade enclosures. The reader should refer to the FIPS document for the formal requirements; however, below is a summary of those requirements.

Under the [11] classification of 'physical embodiments' of cryptographic modules, CMTSs and external CMs are *multiple-chip stand-alone cryptographic modules*. [11] specifies the following Security level 1 requirements for multiple-chip stand-alone modules:

- The chips shall be of production-grade quality, which shall include standard passivation techniques (i.e. a sealing coat over the chip circuitry to protect it against environmental or other physical damage).
- The circuitry within the module shall be implemented as a production grade multiple-chip embodiment (i.e. an IC printed circuit board, a ceramic substrate, etc.).
- The module shall be entirely contained within a metal or hard plastic production-grade enclosure, which may include doors or removable covers.

An internal CM (e.g. as defined in [6]) would be classified as a [11] *multiple-chip embedded cryptographic module*; the Security Level 1 requirements for these devices are the two first bullets listed above.

# 12 BPI+ X.509 certificate profile and management

Data Over Cable System BPI+ shall employ X.509 version 3 digital certificates for authenticating key exchanges between CM and CMTS. X.509 is a general purpose standard; the BPI+ certificate profile, described here, further specifies the contents of the certificate's defined fields. The certificate profile also defines the hierarchy of trust defined for the management and validation of Data Over Cable System BPI+ certificates.

Except where otherwise noted in following clauses, Data Over Cable System BPI+ certificates MUST be in compliance with the IETF's PKIX standards RFC 2459 [17]. Data Over Cable System's usage of X.509 certificates, however, is far more circumscribed than that of PKIX. The IETF's PKIX X.509 certificate profile is aimed at supporting an application-independent, certificate-based, key distribution mechanism across the public Internet. The PKIX X.509 certificate profile must support a wide range of communications environments, applications, and trust relationships.

In contrast, BPI+'s use of digital certificates is restricted to safeguarding MSOs from piracy of Data Over Cable System data communications services through enforcing conditional access to traffic encryption keys. The protected communications services fall into three categories:

- best-effort, high-speed, IP data services;
- premium CBR (constant bit rate) data services; and
- access to premium IP multicast groups.

Thus, while BPI+ draws heavily from the IETF's PKIX X.509 certificate profile effort, the BPI+ X.509 profile is significantly more prescribed.

The BPI+ X.509 Certificate Profile also draws extensively from the Secure Electronic Transaction (SET) standard [26]. Both the overall organization of this clause, and some of the clause's contents reflect that standard.

# 12.1 BPI+ certificate management architecture overview

The Data Over Cable System BPI+ certificate management architecture, depicted in figure 12.1, consists of a three-level hierarchy of trust supporting three types of X.509 version 3 certificates:

- a single, self-signed, Data Over Cable System Root CA certificate;
- manufacturer CA certificates;

• CM certificates.

The Data Over Cable System Root Certification Authority serves as the root CA. The root CA issues certificates to subordinate CAs maintained by manufacturers. Manufacturer CAs issue certificates to cable modem end entities. Note that a single manufacturer may maintain multiple CAs (e.g. a different CA for each manufacturing plant).

Currently, the DOCSIS Root Certificate Authority also serves as the root CA to issue the Code Verification Certificate (CVC) for the Secure Software Downloading specified in Appendix D. However, there is no security reason to require the same root CA to issue both the Manufacturer CA Certificate and the CVC. Therefore, the CVC may be issued by the different root Certificate Authority in the future.

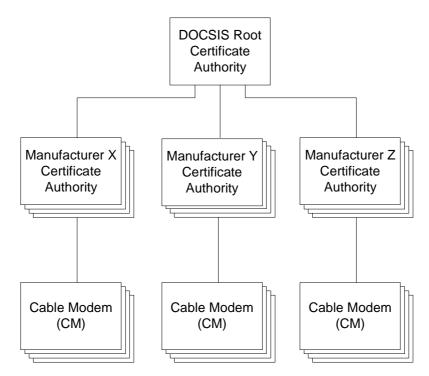


Figure 12.1: DOCS certificate management architecture

The Data Over Cable System Root CA shall be kept under tight physical controls. It will be accessed infrequently to issue new Manufacturer CA certificates. The organization responsible for Data Over Cable System certification will be responsible for maintaining the Data Over Cable System Root CA. The Data Over Cable System Root CA shall generate and distribute to MSOs a Certificate Revocation List (CRL) identifying revoked manufacturer certificates. The manner in which CRLs are distributed to the MSOs is outside the scope of the BPI+ specification.

The organization maintaining the Data Over Cable System Root CA shall define a protocol for Manufacturer-generated certificates to the requesting Manufacturer CA. Specification of this protocol, however, is outside the scope of the BPI+ specification.

Manufacturers will be responsible for maintaining their own CA, from which they will issue CM certificates. A single manufacturer may maintain multiple Manufacturer CAs. Protocols for requesting certificates from a manufacturer CA and distributing the resulting certificates to the receiving Cable Modems shall be internal to that manufacturer, and thus outside the scope of the BPI+ specification. A Manufacturer CA MAY generate and distribute to MSOs CRLs; the manner in which these CRLs are distributed to MSOs is outside the scope of the BPI+ specification.

#### 12.2 Certificate format

This clause describes the X.509 version 3 certificate format and certificate extensions used in BPI+. Table 12.1 summarizes the basic fields of an X.509 Version 3 certificate.

X.509 v3 Field	Description
tbsCertificate.version	Indicates the X.509 certificate version. Always set to v3 (value of 2)
tbsCertificate.serialNumber	Unique integer the issuing CA assigns to the certificate
tbsCertificate.signature	OID and optional parameters defining algorithm used to sign the certificate.
	This field MUST contain the same algorithm identifier as the signatureAlgorithm
	field below
tbsCertificate.issuer	Distinguished Name of the CA that issued the certificate
tbsCertificate.validity	Specifies when the certificate becomes active and when it expires
tbsCertificate.subject	Distinguished Name identifying the entity whose public key is certified in the
	subject public key information field
tbsCertificate	Field contains the public key material (public key and parameters) and the
.subjectPublicKeyInfo	identifier of the algorithm with which the key is used
tbsCertificate	Optional field to allow reuse of issuer names over time
.issuerUniqueID	
tbsCertificate	Optional field to allow reuse of subject names over time
.subjectUnique ID	
tbsCertificate.extensions	The extension data
signatureAlgorithm	OID and optional parameters defining algorithm used to sign the certificate.
	This field MUST contain the same algorithm identifier as the signature field in
	tbsCertificate
signatureValue	Digital signature computed upon the ASN.1 DER encoded tbsCertificate

76

All certificates and CRLs described in the present document MUST be signed with the RSA signature algorithm, using SHA-1 as the one-way hash function. The RSA signature algorithm is described in PKCS #1 [19]; SHA-1 is described in [12]. This is just one example of how BPI+ restricts the values of the X.509 Certificate's basic fields. All of these restrictions are described below.

#### 12.2.1 tbsCertificate.validity.notBefore and tbsCertificate.validity.notAfter

Cable Modem certificates will not be renewable, and, thus, must have a validity period greater than the operational lifetime of the cable modem. A Manufacturer CA certificate MUST be valid from the issuance date for a period defined by [5] and re-issued in a period defined by [5]. The Data Over Cable System Root CA certificate MUST be valid from the date when the Data Over Cable System Root CA starts operating for a period defined by the [5] and re-issued in a period defined by [5].

The present document assumes the operational lifetime of a Cable Modem will not exceed twenty years. The validity period of a Cable Modem certificate MUST begin with the device's data of manufacture; the validity period SHOULD extend out to at least 20 years after that manufacturing date.

Validity periods MUST be encoded as UTCTime. UTCTime values MUST be expressed Greenwich Mean Time (Zulu) and MUST include seconds (i.e. times are YYMMDDHHMMSSZ), even where the number of seconds is zero. The year field (YY) MUST be interpreted as follows:

- Where YY is greater than or equal to 50, the year shall be interpreted as 19YY;
- Where YY is less than 50, the year shall be interpreted as 20YY.

#### 12.2.2 tbsCertificate.serialNumber

The serial number MUST be a positive integer assigned by the CA to each certificate. It MUST be unique for each certificate issued by a given CA (i.e. the issuer name and serial number identify a unique certificate). CAs MUST force the serialNumber to be a non-negative integer. The Manufacturer SHOULD NOT impose or assume a relationship between the serial number of the certificate and the serial number of the modem to which the certificate is issued.

Given the uniqueness requirements above, serial numbers can be expected to contain long integers. Certificate users MUST be able to handle serialNumber values up to 20 octets. Conformant CAs MUST NOT use serialNumber values longer than 20 octets.

77

NOTE: Certificate users in the Data Over Cable System 1.1 system MUST be prepared to handle certificates that may already have negative, or zero, serial numbers, to ensure backwards compatibility.

### 12.2.3 tbsCertificate.signature and signatureAlgorithm

All certificates and CRLs described in the present document MUST be signed with the RSA signature algorithm, using SHA-1 as the one-way hash function. The RSA signature algorithm is described in PKCS #1 [19]; SHA-1 is described in [12].

The ASN.1 OID used to identify the 'SHA-1 with RSA' signature algorithm is:

```
sha-1WithRSAEncryption OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= {
iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) rsadsi(113549) pkcs(1)
pkcs-1(1) 5}
```

When the sha-1WithRSAEncryption OID appears within the ASN.1 type AlgorithmIdentifier, as is the case with both tbsCertificate.signature and signatureAlgorithm, the parameters component of that type is the ASN.1 type NULL.

### 12.2.4 tbsCertificate.issuer and tbsCertificate.subject

X.509 Names are SEQUENCES of RelativeDistinguishedNames, which are in turn SETs of AttributeTypeAndValue. AttributeTypeAndValue is a SEQUENCE of an AttributeType (an OBJECT IDENTIFIER) and an AttributeValue. The value of the countryName attribute MUST be a 2-character PrintableString, chosen from ISO 3166 [28]; all other AttributeValues MUST be encoded as either T.61/TeletexString or PrintableString character strings. The PrintableString mUST be used if the character string contains only characters from the PrintableString set. Specifically:

```
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
0123456789
'()+,-./:=? and space.
```

The T.61/TeletexString MUST be used if the character string contains other characters.

The following OIDs are needed for defining issuer and subject Names in BPI+ certificates:

```
id-at OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= {joint-iso-ccitt(2) ds(5) 4}
id-at-commonName OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= {id-at 3}
id-at-countryName OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= {id-at 6}
id-at-localityName OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= {id-at 7}
id-at-stateOrProvinceName OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= {id-at 8}
id-at-organizationName OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= {id-at 10}
id-at-organizationalUnitName OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= {id-at 11}
```

The following clauses describe the format of the subject name field for each type of BPI+ certificate. The issuer name field of a certificate matches the subject name field of the issuing certificate. Any certificate transmitted by a CM in an Auth Info or Auth Request message MUST have name fields that conform to the indicated format. A CMTS MUST be capable of processing the name fields of a certificate if the name fields conform to the indicated format. A CMTS MAY choose to accept a certificate that has name fields that do not conform to the indicated format.

In general, X.509 certificates support a liberal set of rules for determining if the issuer name of a certificate matches the subject name of another. The rules are such that two name fields may be declared to match even though a binary comparison of the two name fields does not indicate a match. IETF RFC 2459 [17] recommends that certificate authorities restrict the encoding of name fields so that an implementation can declare a match or mismatch using simple binary comparison. BPI+ follows the present document. Accordingly, the DER-encoded tbsCertificate.issuer field of a BPI+ certificate MUST be an exact match to the DER-encoded tbsCertificate.subject field of its issuer certificate. An implementation MAY compare an issuer name to a subject name by performing a binary comparison of the DER-encoded tbsCertificate.issuer and tbsCertificate.subject fields.

### 12.2.4.1 Data Over Cable System root certificate

The root certificate must comply with either (1) or (2) immediately below:

1) countryName=US

organizationName=Data Over Cable Service Interface Specifications

organizationalUnitName=Cable Modems

commonName=Data Over Cable System Cable Modem Root Certificate Authority

The countryName, organizationName, organizationalUnitName and commonName attributes MUST be included and MUST have the values shown. Other attributes are not allowed and MUST NOT be included.

2) tComLabs - Euro-DOCSIS

countryName=BE

organizationName=tComLabs - Euro-DOCSIS

organizationalUnitName=Cable Modems

commonName=Euro-DOCSIS Cable Modem Root CA

The countryName, organizationName, organizationalUnitName and commonName attributes MUST be included and MUST have the values shown. Other attributes are not allowed and MUST NOT be included.

### 12.2.4.2 Data Over Cable System manufacturer certificate

The manufacturer certificate must comply with either (1) or (2) immediately below:

 countryName=<Country of Manufacturer> [stateOrProvinceName=<state/province>] [localityName=<City>]

organizationName=<Company Name>

organizationalUnitName=Data Over Cable System

[organizationalUnitName=<Manufacturing Location>]

commonName=<Company Name> [<Serial Identifier>] Cable Modem Root Certificate Authority [<Serial Identifier>]

The countryName, organizationName, and commonName attributes MUST be included and MUST have the values shown.

The commonName MAY contain a serial identifier (e.g. 1, 2, ONE, TWO, A, B, I, II, etc.) to identify different Manufacturer CAs deployed by the same Manufacturers with the same Company Name.

The organizationalUnitName having the value "Data Over Cable System" MUST be included.

The organizationalUnitName representing manufacturing location SHOULD be included. If included, it MUST be preceded by the organizationalUnitName having value "Data Over Cable System".

The stateOrProvinceName and localityName MAY be included.

78

Other attributes are not allowed and MUST NOT be included.

2) tComLabs - Euro-DOCSIS

countryName=<Country of Manufacturer>
[stateOrProvinceName=<state/province>]
[localityName=<City>]

organizationName=<Company Name>

organizationalUnitName=<see further>

[organizationalUnitName=<Manufacturing Location>]

commonName=<Company Name> [<Serial Identifier>] Cable Modem Root Certificate Authority [<Serial Identifier>]

The countryName, organizationName, and commonName attributes MUST be included and MUST have the values shown.

The organizationalUnitName having the value 'DOCSIS' or 'Euro-DOCSIS' MUST be included, its value SHOULD be 'Euro-DOCSIS', if the value is not 'Euro-DOCSIS' the value MUST be "DOCSIS".

### 12.2.4.3 Cable modem certificate

countryName=<Country of Manufacturer>

organizationName=<Company Name>

organizationalUnitName=<manufacturing location>

[commonName=<Serial Number>]

commonName=<MAC Address>

To distinguish between the two commonNames, the commonName representing the 'Serial Number' MUST precede the commonName representing 'MAC Address'. Use of the Serial Number field is deprecated. If used, the Serial Number MUST be a unique cable modem identifier, but MAY be different from the serial number encoded in the BPKM attributes. The MAC address in the CM Certificate MUST be the same as the MAC address in the BPKM Attributes.

The characters employed in the PrintableString representation of CM serial numbers MUST be restricted to the following character subset:

- A-Z (0x41-0x5A);
- a-z (0x61-0x7A);
- 0-9 (0x30-0x39);
- '-' (0x2D).

The MAC Address is expressed as six pairs of hexadecimal digits separated by colons (:), e.g. '00:60:21:A5:0A:23'. The Alpha HEX characters (A-F) MUST be expressed as uppercase letters.

The organizationalUnitName in a Cable Modem certificate, which describes the modem's manufacturing location, SHOULD be the same as the organizationalUnitName in the issuer Name describing a manufacturing location.

The countryName, organizationName, organizationalUnitName, and commonName (MAC Address) attributes MUST be included. The commonName (Serial Number) attribute MAY be included. Other attributes are not allowed and MUST NOT be included.

### 12.2.5 tbsCertificate.subjectPublicKeyInfo

The tbsCertificate.subjectPublicKeyInfo field contains the public key and the public key algorithm identifier. The RSA public key in the CM Certificate MUST be the same as the RSA public key in the BPKM Attributes.

80

The tbsCertificate.subjectPublicKeyInfo.algorithm field is an AlgorithmIdentifier structure. The AlgorithmIdentifier's algorithm MUST be RSA encryption, identified by the following OID:

```
pkcs-1 OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { iso(1) member-body(2) us(840)
rsadsi(113549) pkcs(1) 1}
rsaEncryption OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { pkcs-1 1}
```

The AlgorithmIdentifier's parameters field MUST have ASN.1 type NULL.

The RSA public key shall be encoded using the ASN.1 type RSAPublicKey:

RSAPublicKey ::=	SEQUENCE {
modulus	INTEGER, n
publicExponent	<pre>INTEGER, e }</pre>

where modulus is the modulus n, and publicExponent is the public exponent e. The DER encoded RSAPublicKey is the value of the BIT STRING tbsCertificate.subjectPublicKeyInfo.subjectPublicKey.

### 12.2.6 tbsCertificate.issuerUniqueID and tbsCertificate.subjectUniqueID

The issuerUniqueID and subjectUniqueID fields MUST be omitted for all three of BPI+'s certificate types.

### 12.2.7 tbsCertificate.extensions

Cable Modem certificates and Data Over Cable System Manufacturer CA certificates are not required to include any extensions; this is true even for extensions mandated by RFC 2459 [17]. Cable Modem certificates and Data Over Cable System Manufacturer CA certificates may include extensions as described in clauses 9.2.7.1 and 9.2.7.2, respectively. Clause 9.2.7.3 specifies the requirements on the extensions of Data Over Cable System Root CA certificate. Extensions included in BPI+ certificates MUST conform to RFC 2459 [17].

### 12.2.7.1 Cable modem certificates

Cable Modem certificates MAY contain non-critical extensions; they MUST NOT contain critical extensions. If the KeyUsage extension is present, the digitalSignature and keyEncipherment bits MUST be turned on, keyCertSign and cRLSign bits MUST be turned off, and all other bits SHOULD be turned off. The basicConstraints extension MAY appear as a non-critical extension in cable modem certificates.

### 12.2.7.2 Data Over Cable System manufacturer CA certificates

Data Over Cable System Manufacturer CA certificates MAY contain the Basic Constraints extension and/or the Key Usage extension. If included, these extensions MAY appear as a critical extension or as a non-critical extension.

Data Over Cable System Manufacturer CA certificates MAY contain non-critical extensions; they MUST NOT contain critical extensions other than, possibly, the Basic Constraints extension and the Key Usage extension.

If the Key Usage extension is present in a Data Over Cable System Manufacturer CA certificate, the keyCertSign bit MUST be turned on, cRLSign bit MAY be turned on, and all other bits SHOULD be turned off.

If the Basic Constraints extension is present, the CA MUST be set to TRUE and the pathLenConstraint MUST be set to 0.

### 12.2.7.3 Data Over Cable System root CA certificate

Data Over Cable System Root CA certificate MUST contain the Basic Constraints extension and the Key Usage extension as critical extensions.

Data Over Cable System Root CA certificate MAY contain non-critical extensions; they MUST NOT contain critical extensions other than the Basic Constraints extension and the Key Usage extension.

81

For the KeyUsage extension, the keyCertSign bit MUST be turned on, cRLSign bit MAY be turned on, and all other bits SHOULD be turned off.

For the Basic Constraints extension, the CA MUST be set to TRUE and the pathLenConstraint MUST be set to 1.

### 12.2.8 signatureValue

In all three BPI+ certificate types, the signatureValue contains the RSA (with SHA-1) signature computed over the ASN.1 DER encoded tbsCertificate. The ASN.1 DER encoded tbsCertificate is used as input to the RSA signature function. The resulting signature value is ASN.1 encoded as a BIT STRING and included in the Certificate's signatureValue field.

# 12.3 Cable Modem certificate storage and management in the CM

Manufacturer-issued CM certificates MUST be stored in CM permanent, write-once memory. CMs that have factory-installed RSA private/public key pairs MUST also have factory-installed CM certificates. CMs that rely on internal algorithms to generate an RSA key pair MUST support a mechanism for installing a manufacturer-issued CM certificate following key generation.

The root CA public key for the CVC verification, which the CM uses to verify the Code Verification Certificate (CVC) for the Secure Software Download defined in annex D, MUST be placed into the CM's non-volatile memory. While the Data Over Cable System Root CA for the cable modem certificate chain currently issues the CVC, a different root CA may issue the CVC in the future. Therefore, the CM MUST NOT use the root CA public key for the CVC verification embedded in the CM's non-volatile memory in order to verify the cable modem certificate chain.

The CA certificate of the Manufacturer CA that signed the CM certificate MUST be stored in the cable modem's non-volatile memory. The cable modem MUST be capable of updating or replacing the Manufacturer CA certificate via the Data Over Cable System code download file (see annex D). The Manufacturer CA certificate MAY be embedded into the CM software.

In the case where the Manufacturer CA certificate is embedded into the CM software, if a manufacturer issues CM certificates with multiple CA certificates the CM memory must include ALL of that manufacturer's CA certificates. The specific Manufacturer CA certificate installed by the CM (i.e. advertised in Authentication Information messages and returned by the MIB object) will be that identifying the issuer of that modem's CM certificate.

# 12.4 Certificate processing and management in the CMTS

BPKM employs digital certificates to allow CMTSs to verify the binding between a CM's identity (encoded in an X.509 digital certificate's subject names) and its public key. The CMTS does this by validating the CM certificate's certification path or chain. This path will typically consist of three chained certificates: starting with the CM Certificate, the path leads to the certificate of the Manufacturer CA that issued the CM Certificate, and ends at the Data Over Cable System Root CA's self-signed certificate (see figure 12.2). Validating the chain means verifying the Manufacturer CA Certificate's signature with the Data Over Cable System Root CA's public key and then verifying the CM Certificate's signature with the public key of the Manufacturer CA.



Figure 12.2: CM Certification Chain

BPI+ requires that CMTSs support administrative controls that allow the operator to override certification chain validation by specifying a Manufacturer CA or CM Certificate to be trusted or untrusted. A detailed description of these administrative controls on CMTS certificate management is provided in BPI+'s associated OSS document [7]. This clause specifies the management model for the exercise of these controls, as well as the processing a CMTS undertakes to assess a CM Certificate's validity, and thus verify the binding between the CM's identity and its public key.

### 12.4.1 CMTS certificate management model

The CMTS maintains copies of Root CA, Manufacturer CA and Cable Modem Certificates, which it obtains through either provisioning or BPKM messaging. Each certificate a CMTS learns of MUST be marked as being in one of four states: Untrusted, Trusted, Chained or Root. Only the Data Over Cable System Root CA Certificate (a self-signed certificate containing the Data Over Cable System Root CA's trusted public key) MUST be marked as Root. However, a CMTS MAY support multiple Root CA Certificates. Root Certificate(s) MUST be provisioned within a CMTS and the CMTS MUST support the function to show the entire Root Certificate(s) and/or its thumbprint so that the operator can verify the Root Certificate(s).

A CMTS learns of Manufacturer CA Certificates through either the CMTS's provisioning interface or through receipt and processing of client CMs' Authentication Information messages. Regardless of how a CMTS obtains its Manufacturer CA Certificates, the CMTS MUST mark them as either Untrusted, Trusted or Chained. If a Manufacturer CA Certificate *is not* self-signed, the CMTS marks the certificate as Chained. The CMTS, however, MUST support administrative controls that allow an operator to override the Chained marking and specify that a given Manufacturer CA Certificate is Trusted or Untrusted.

If a Manufacturer CA Certificate *is* self-signed, the CMTS marks the certificate as either Trusted or Untrusted, according to administratively controlled CMTS policy. A self-signed Manufacturer CA Certificate whose signature cannot be verified MUST be marked as Untrusted. CMTS trusting of self-signed Manufacturer CA Certificates MUST be configurable. Default trusting of self-signed Manufacturer CA Certificates is NOT RECOMMENDED in commercially operational systems; default trusting would primarily be used to support certification and other testing modes. The CMTS MUST mark the CM Certificate as Chained unless overridden by CMTS's administrative control.

82

A CMTS obtains copies of Cable Modem Certificates in the Authorization Requests it receives from client CMs. Cable Modem Certificates MUST be issued by a Manufacturer CA; thus, unless overridden by CMTS administrative control, the CMTS will mark CM Certificates as Chained. An operator may, as part of the modem provisioning process, specify that a given CM's certificate be marked as Untrusted or Trusted.

83

## 12.4.2 Certificate validation

The CMTS validates the certification paths of Manufacture CA and CM Certificates using the following criteria. Note that the criteria are iterative and require a CMTS to validate the certification path of a Chained Manufacturer CA certificate before it can validate the certification path of a CM Certificate issued by that Manufacturer CA.

The CMTS labels Manufacturer CA and Cable Modem Certificates as *Valid* or *Invalid* if their certification paths are valid or invalid, respectively. Trusted certificates are Valid; this is true even if the current time does not fall within the Trusted certificate's validity period. Untrusted certificates are Invalid.

A Chained certificate is Valid if:

- 1) the certificate chains to either a Root, Trusted, or Valid certificate; and
- 2) the certificate's signature can be verified with the issuer's public key; and
- 3) the current time falls within the validity period of each Chained or Root certificate within the certificate chain (note that BPI+ does not require the nesting of validity periods, i.e. a certificate's entire validity period need not fall within the validity period of its issuing certificate); and
- 4) the certificate is not on a *hot list* of CM and Manufacturer CA Certificates (see clause 12.4.4);
- 5) in the case of a CM certificate, the CM MAC address encoded in its tbsCertificate.subject field and RSA public key encoded on its tbsCertificate.subjectPublicKeyInfo field match the CM MAC address and RSA public key encoded in the Authorization Request's BPKM Attributes; *and*
- 6) in the case of a CM Certificate, if the KeyUsage extension is present, the digitalSignature and/or keyAgreement bits are turned on, the keyEncipherment bit is turned on, and the keyCertSign and cRLSign bits are off; in the case of a Manufacturer CA Certificate, if the KeyUsage extension is present, the keyCertSign bit is turned on.

Whether criteria 3 above is ignored MUST be subject to administrative control.

If validity period checking is ENABLED and the time of day has not been acquired by the CMTS, a (non-permanent) authorization reject message MUST be returned in response to a BPI+ style authorization request.

If a Chained Certificate certificate does not satisfy any one of the above validity criteria, it is identified as being Invalid.

If a CMTS marks a CM Certificate as being either Untrusted or Invalid, the CMTS MUST reject the corresponding CM's Authorization Requests.

## 12.4.3 Certificate thumbprints

Thumbprints are collision-resistant one-way hash functions (e.g. SHA-1) of certificates. They provide a compact way to identify certificates. A CMTS MAY keep Thumbprints of CM and Manufacturer CA certificates it holds or has validated. Using Thumbprints, a CMTS can cache the results of an earlier validation operation: by matching the Thumbprint of a newly offered certificate with that of a cached Thumbprint, it can quickly determine the validity of the offered certificate.

## 12.4.4 Manufacturer CA and CM certificate hot lists

When validating certificate chains, the CMTS is not required to check a certificate's revocation status (i.e. check for the certificate's presence on an up-to-date CRL). The CMTS, however, MUST be capable of maintaining *hot lists* of known, untrusted, Manufacturer CA and CM certificates. Certificates on these hot lists may include certificates revoked by their issuers; however, they may also include valid certificates that the MSO operating the CMTS chooses to mark as 'untrusted'.

Definition of procedures and protocols for maintaining a CMTS's Manufacturer CA certificate and CM certificate hot lists are outside the scope of the BPI+ specification.

84

# Annex A (normative): TFTP configuration file extensions

All of a CM's Baseline Privacy configuration parameter values are specified in the configuration file TFTP-downloaded by the CM during RF MAC initialization. Baseline Privacy configuration setting fields are included in both the CM MIC and CMTS MIC calculations, and in a CM's registration requests. Refer to ES 201 488-2 [2] for the order in which Baseline Privacy configuration setting fields are included in the CMTS MIC's MD5 digest.

85

# A.1 Encodings

The following type/length/value encodings MUST be used for any Baseline Privacy configuration settings included in the configuration file. The Baseline Privacy configuration settings in the RF MAC CM registration requests MUST be the same as those included in the configuration file. All multi-octet quantities are in network-byte order, i.e. the octet containing the most-significant bits is the first transmitted on the wire.

# A.1.1 Baseline privacy configuration setting

The combination of RFI 1.1's Privacy Enable configuration setting (ES 201 488-2 [2], clause C.1.1.16) and the Privacy Support Modem Capability Setting (ES 201 488-2 [2], clause C.1.3.1.6) controls whether Baseline Privacy Plus is enabled or disabled in a CM. If the operator intends to provision a CM to operate in BPI+ mode using the default BPI Configuration Parameter(s) specified in table A.1, the corresponding Baseline Privacy Configuration subsetting(s) in the configuration file MAY be omitted. If the configuration file does not contain all the necessary BPI+ parameters, the CM MUST use the default value(s) specified in table A.1 for the missing parameter(s). On the other hand, if the operator intends to provision a CM to operate in BPI+ mode using the BPI Configuration Parameter(s) different from the default value(s) in table A.1, the corresponding Baseline Privacy Configuration Parameter, the default value(s) mode using the BPI Configuration subsetting(s) MUST be present. The Baseline Privacy Configuration setting MAY be present if Baseline Privacy Plus is disabled. The separate Privacy Enable parameter allows an operator to disable or re-enable Baseline Privacy by toggling a single configuration parameter, thus not requiring the removal or re-insertion of the larger set of Baseline Privacy Configuration parameters.

This field defines the parameters associated with Baseline Privacy operation. It is composed of a number of encapsulated type/length/value fields. The type fields defined are only valid within the encapsulated Baseline Privacy configuration setting string.

type length value

BP\_CFG n

ES 201 488-2 [2] defines the specific value of BP\_CFG.

## A.1.1.1 Internal baseline privacy encodings

### A.1.1.1.1 Authorize wait timeout

The value of the field specifies retransmission interval, in seconds, of Authorization Request messages from the Authorize Wait state.

sub-type length value

1 4

Valid Range: 1 - 30

#### A.1.1.1.2 Reauthorize Wait Timeout

The value of the field specifies retransmission interval, in seconds, of Authorization Request messages from the Authorize Wait state.

86

sub-type length value

2 4

Valid Range: 1 - 30

#### A.1.1.1.3 Authorization Grace Time

The value of this field specifies the grace period for re-authorization, in seconds.

sub-type length value

3 4

Valid Range: 1 - 6 047 999

#### A.1.1.1.4 **Operational Wait Timeout**

The value of this field specifies the retransmission interval, in seconds, of Key Requests from the Operational Wait state.

sub-type length value 4

4

Valid Range: 1 - 10

#### A.1.1.1.5 **Rekey Wait Timeout**

The value of this field specifies the retransmission interval, in seconds, of Key Requests from the Rekey Wait state.

length sub-type value

5 4

Valid Range: 1 - 10

#### A.1.1.1.6 **TEK Grace Time**

The value of this field specifies grace period, in seconds, for rekeying the TEK.

sub-type length value 6 4

Valid Range: 1 - 302 399

#### A.1.1.1.7 Authorize Reject Wait Timeout

The value of this field specifies how long a CM waits (seconds) in the Authorize Reject Wait state after receiving an Authorization Reject.

sub-type length value

7 4

Valid Range: 1 - 600

### A.1.1.1.8 SA Map Wait Timeout

The value of this field specifies the retransmission interval, in seconds, of SA Map Requests from the Map Wait state.

87

sub-type length value 8 4

Valid Range: 1 - 10

### A.1.1.1.9 SA Map Max Retries

The value of this field specifies the maximum number of Map Request retries allowed.

sub-type length value 9 4

Valid Range: 0 - 10

# A.2 Parameter guidelines

Below are recommended ranges and values for Baseline Privacy's various configuration and operational parameters. These ranges and default values may change as service providers gain operational experience running Baseline Privacy.

System	Name	Description	Minimum Value	Default Value	Maximum Value
CMTS	Authorization Lifetime	Lifetime, in seconds, CMTS assigns to new Authorization Key	1 day (86 400 s)	7 days (604 800 s)	70 days (6 048 000 s)
CMTS	TEK Lifetime	Lifetime, in seconds, CMTS assigns to new TEK	30 min (1 800 s)	12 hours (43 200 s)	7 days (604 800 s)
СМ	Authorize Wait Timeout	Auth Req retransmission interval from Auth Wait state	2 s	10 s	30 s
СМ	Reauthorize Wait Timeout	Auth Req retransmission interval from Reauth Wait state	2 s	10 s	30 s
СМ	Authorization Grace Time	Time prior to Authorization expiration CM begins re- authorization	5 min (300 s)	10 min (600 s)	35 days (3 024 000 s).
СМ	Operational Wait Timeout	Key Req retransmission interval from Op Wait state	1 s	10 s	10 s
СМ	Rekey Wait Timeout	Key Req retransmission interval from Rekey Wait state	1 s	10 s	10 s
СМ	TEK Grace Time	Time prior to newer TEK expiration CM begins rekeying	5 min (300 s)	1 hour (3 600 s)	3,5 days (302 399 s)
СМ	Authorize Reject Wait	Delay before re-sending Auth Request after receiving Auth Reject	10 s	60 s	10 min (600 s)
СМ	SA Map Wait Timeout	Map Request retransmission interval from Map Wait state	1 s	1 s	10 s
СМ	SA Map Max Retries	Maximum number of times CM retries SA Map Request before giving up	0	4	10

Table A.1: Recommended operational ranges for BPI configuration parameters

The valid range (vs. recommended operational range) for Authorization and TEK lifetimes are:

- Authorization Lifetime Valid Range: 1 s to 6 048 000 s
- TEK Lifetime Valid Range: 1 s to 604 800 s

Note that valid ranges defined for each of BPI's configuration parameters extend below the recommended operational ranges. For the purposes of protocol testing, it is useful to run the BPI protocol with timer values well below the low end of the recommended operational ranges. The shorter timer values 'speed up' BPI's clock, causing BPI protocol state machine events to occur far more rapidly than they would under an 'operational' configuration. While BPI implementations need not be designed to operate efficiently at this accelerated BPI pace, the protocol implementation SHOULD operate correctly under these shorter timer values. Table A.2 provides a list of shortened parameter values which are likely to be employed in protocol conformance and certification testing.

Authorization Lifetime	5 min (300 s)
TEK Lifetime	3 min (180 s)
Authorization Grace Time	1 min (60 s)
TEK Grace time	1 min (60 s)

### Table A.2: Shortened BPI parameter values for protocol testing

The TEK Grace Time MUST be less than half the TEK lifetime.

# Annex B (informative): Example messages, certificates and PDUs

This annex presents numerical examples which may be useful to implementors of the specification. The examples walk through a typical key exchange: Authorization Info, Authorization Request, Authorization Reply, Key Request, and Key Reply. Details of the cryptographic calculations are provided at each step, and example certificates are included. The examples also include several PacketPDUs, encrypted using the keying material derived in the example key exchange.

89

This annex is informative only and does not constitute any part of the specification.

# B.1 Notation

In the examples here, packets are represented as a stream of octets, each octet in hex notation, sometimes with a text annotation. The order of transmission for the octets is left to right, top to bottom. For example, consider the following representation of a packet:

00	01	02	03	Description	#1
04	05				
06	07	08		Description	#2

The packet consists of 9 octets, represented in hex notation as '00', '01', ..., '08'. The octet represented by '00' is transmitted first, and the octet represented by '08' is transmitted last.

In the discussion of the examples, integer values are represented in either hex notation using a '0x' prefix or in decimal notation with no prefix. For example, the hex notation 0x12345 and the decimal notation 74565 represent the same integer value. All integer values are non-negative. Thus, 0xff represents the integer having value 255, not a negative value.

The BPKM protocol generates and distributes 8-octet DES keys and 16-octet triple-DES keys, without correcting the least significant bit of each octet for parity. Implementations extract a 56-bit key from an 8-octet key and a 112-bit key from a 16-octet key by ignoring the value of the least significant bit of each octet. In the examples here, keys are represented without parity correction.

# B.2 Authentication info

The CM sends the following Authentication Info message:

0c	01	02	94															Auth Info header
11	02	91																CA Certificate header
30	82	02	8d	30	82	01	f6		. 8	18	71	L9	61	72	20	19	1e	CA Certificate

The code field has value 0x0c, which identifies this as an Authentication Info message. The Length field has value 0x294 (660), which is the number of octets that follow the Length field.

The only attribute is the CA Certificate. Details of the certificate are given below.

# B.2.1 CA certificate details

The fields of the CA Certificate in the Authorization Info message above break down as follows:

90

30	82	02	8d																				certificate header
30	82	01	f6																				tbsCertificate header
- 0	0.2	02	01	0.2																			version
			-	-	0.4	0.5	00	07	0.0														
-	80	-				05				0.1	0.1	0.5	0.5	0.0									serial number
		06	09	2a	86	48	86	Í7	υa	01	01	05	05	00									signature
	81		~ ~		~ ~		~ 1			~ ~													issuer header
-		30													-								country name
31	0f	30	0d	06	03	55	04	0a	13	06	4e	6f	72	74	65	6c							organization name
31	0f	30	0d	06	03	55	04	0b	13	06	44	4f	43	53	49	53							organizational
																							unit name
31	1f	30	1d	06	03	55	04	0b	13	16	42	75	69	бс	64	69	бe	67	20	31	2c	20	organizational
41	бe	64	бf	76	65	72	20	4d	41														unit name
31	36	30	34	06	03	55	04	03	13	2d	4e	6f	72	74	65	бc	20	43	61	62	бc	65	common name
20	4d	бf	64	65	6d	20	52	бf	6f	74	20	43	65	72	74	69	66	69	63	61	74	65	
20	41	75	74	68	6f	72	69	74	79														
30	1e																						validity
																							header
17	0d	39	39	30	31	32	30	31	36	30	35	30	30	5a									not before
17	0d	34	39	31	32	33	31	32	33	35	39	35	35	5a									not after
30	81	88																					subject
																							header
31	0b	30	09	06	03	55	04	06	13	02	55	53											country name
31	0f	30											72	74	65	бc							organization
																							name
31	0f	30	0d	06	03	55	04	0b	13	06	44	4f	43	53	49	53							organizational
																							unit name
31	1f	30	1d	06	03	55	04	0b	13	16	42	75	69	бc	64	69	бe	67	20	31	2c	20	organizational
41	бe	64	6f	76	65	72	20	4d	41														unit name
31	36	30	34	06	03	55	04	03	13	2d	4e	6f	72	74	65	бc	20	43	61	62	бc	65	common name
20	4d	6f	64	65	6d	20	52	6f	6f	74	20	43	65	72	74	69	66	69	63	61	74	65	
20	41	75	74	68	6f	72	69	74	79														
30	81	9f																					subject public
																							key info header
30	0d	06	09	2a	86	48	86	f7	0d	01	01	01	05	00									public key algorithm
																							type
03	81	8d	00	30	81	89																	public key
																							header
02	81	81	00	af	d1	86	с8	17	45	02	bc	e5	59	b4	15	ac	95	87	7b	89	f5	8b	public key
f8	3b	8a	8b	ef	67	cf	9e	00	47	d5	f1	06	42	55	36	al	d1	8c	dc	cb	81	bb	modulus
31	8d	35	f7	6d	11	a0	91	9b	31	3d	b9	71	38	46	15	с8	81	c4	51	06	7b	d7	
8a	70	be	c1	28	0d	78	80	3c	44	aб	5e	35	5f	бe	46	2f	80	41	28	78	63	бс	
86	CC	d0	b3	58	са	bc	07	d5	19	3e	8a	a2	1c	7e	ff	0d	16	2b	0f	bd	a5	5e	
		64			24	76	ed	e4	a9	e3	81	26	0c	de	8a	89							
02	03	01	00	01	_	_		_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	public key exponent
30	0d	06	09	2a	86	48	86	f7	0d	01	01	0.5	05	00									signature algorithm
		81													92	4a	CP	ch	60	fb	8h	fc	signature value
		4b																					Signature variat
		<u>за</u>																					
		12																					
		09																					
		77																			-		
L							-																

Some of the fields in this example are the same in all CA certificates. These fields are:

- version: v3
- signature: SHA-1 with RSA, null parameters
- subject first organizational unit name: "Data Over Cable System"
- public key algorithm type: RSA encryption, null parameters
- public key exponent: 3-octet integer, value 0x10001

• signature algorithm: SHA-1 with RSA, null parameters

This is an example of a self-signed CA certificate. The issuer name and the subject names are identical. In this example, the matching name fields are:

91

- country name: "US"
- organization name: "Nortel"
- first organizational unit name: "Data Over Cable System"
- second organizational unit name: "Building 1, Andover MA"
- common name: "Nortel Cable Modem Root Certificate Authority"

The other fields are example values. Some of these are:

- serial number: integer of 8 octets, value 0x0102030405060708. Other CA certificates may use a different length.
- not before: 1999-01-20 16:05:00 GMT
- not after: 2049-12-31 23:59:55 GMT
- public key modulus: integer of 1 024 bits, value 0x00afd1...8a89. Other CA certificates may use an integer of length 1 024 bits to 2 048 bits, inclusive.
- signature value: bit string of length 1 024 bits, representing the integer value 0x00814d...191e. Other CA certificates may use a bit string of length 1 024 to 2 048 bits, inclusive; the length matches that of the issuer's modulus. The signature is computed over the portion of the certificate that begins with the tbsCertificate header and ends with the public key exponent, inclusive.

# B.3 Authorization request

The CM sends the following Authorization request:

-																							
04	72	03	40																				Auth Request header
05	00	ad																					CM-Identification
																							header
01	00	0c	30	30	30	30	30	30	31	32	33	34	35	36									Serial Number
02	00	03	00	00	са																		Manufacturer ID
03	00	06	00	00	са	01	04	01															MAC Address
04	00	8c	30	81	89	02	81	81	00	e0	e0	бc	8d	be	b2	8b	c9	£3	аб	3d	al	12	RSA Public Key
ea	f7	99	f7	3d	3e	fa	a3	b1	e2	42	95	71	b5	71	d2	32	7a	da	10	40	e2	5b	
09	74	69	08	78	46	37	71	34	3e	69	a7	37	6d	f8	70	1d	aa	a5	34	b0	33	a3	
43	ac	4d	eb	41	5e	0a	8a	fd	аб	0a	4b	09	7f	5a	18	f2	9e	c2	22	aб	6b	9a	
69	73	22	d5	37	с9	63	b0	88	f5	60	5d	99	16	33	54	53	30	ed	35	de	0c	87	
3b	54	ba	59	22	3e	b2	79	90	96	61	db	£3	4a	37	18	4c	7f	a8	ca	ee	d6	31	
02	03	01	00	01																			
12	02	7a																					CM Certificate
																							header
30	82	02	76	30	82	01	df	• •		19	с9	f1	dc	30	b8	d3	d5						CM Certificate
13	00	0b																					Security Capabilities
																							header
15	00	04	01	00	02	00																	Cryptographic Suite
																							List
16	00	01	01																				BPI Version
0c	00	02	22	60																			SAID

The Code field has value 0x04, which identifies this as an Authorization Request packet. The Identifier field has value 0x72; this is an example value. The Length field has value 0x0340 (832), which is the number of octets that follow the Length field.

The first attribute is the CM Identification. It is a compound attribute consisting of the following sub-attributes: Serial Number, Manufacturer ID, MAC Address, and RSA Public Key. Example values are shown for these sub-attributes.

The RSA Public Key is DER-encoded and is similar to the example in clause 2.2 of [20]. The modulus is a 1 024-bit integer represented using 0x81 (129) octets. In this example, the value of the modulus is:

92

0x00e0e06c8d ... caeed631.

Notice that 0x00 is the most significant octet of the modulus and 0x31 is the least significant. The exponent is an integer made up of 3 octets and having value 0x010001.

The next attribute is the CM Certificate. Details of the certificate are given below. Note that some fields of the CM Certificate must match sub-attributes of the CM Identification; these sub-attributes are the MAC Address and RSA Public Key.

The next attribute is the Security Capabilities attribute. It is a compound attribute consisting of the Cryptographic Suite List and the BPI Version. In this example, two Cryptographic Suites are listed: 56-bit DES with no authentication, and 40-bit DES with no authentication. The BPI Version is BPI+.

The final attribute is the CM's Primary SAID, whose value is equal to its Primary SID. In this example, the Primary Said has value 0x2260.

# B.3.1 CM certificate details

The fields of the CM Certificate in the Authorization Info message above break down as follows:

93

20	0.0	0.0	76																				acutificate beeden
		02																					certificate header
30	82	01	dİ																				tbsCertificate
																							header
a0	03	02	01	02																			version
02	08	01	01	01	01	01	01	01	01														serial number
30	0d	06	09	2a	86	48	86	f7	0d	01	01	05	05	00									signature
30	81	88																					issuer header
31	0b	30	09	06	03	55	04	06	13	02	55	53											country name
31	0f	30	0d	06	03	55	04	0a	13	06	4e	6f	72	74	65	бc							organization name
31	0f	30	0d	06	03	55	04	0b	13	06	44	4f	43	53	49	53							organizational unit
-																							name
31	1f	30	1d	06	03	55	04	0b	13	16	42	75	69	бc	64	69	бe	67	20	31	2c	20	organizational unit
41	бe	64	6f	76	65	72	20	4d	41														name
		30			03					2d	4e	6f	72	74	65	бc	20	43	61	62	бc	65	common name
-		6f																					
		75																					
	1e	-			-				-														validity header
	-	39	39	30	33	32	33	31	36	35	38	33	34	5a									not before
_		34		31		-	31	32	33		39		30										not after
30		51	57	51	52	55	51	52	55	55	55	55	50	Ju									subject header
		30	0.0	06	03	55	0.4	06	12	0.2	55	EЭ											country name
31	0D	30		06	03	55	04		13				70	74	65	6							organization name
-									-		-	-				60 69	<i>c</i> -	<b>CD</b>	~ ~	2.1	0	0.0	5
-		30			03					Τ0	42	/5	69	6C	64	69	ьe	67	20	31	ZC	20	organizational unit
_		64 30					-			0~	20	20	2.0	2.0	20	30	2.1	2.2	2.2	2.4	25	26	name
31	12	30	13	06	03	22	04	03	13	06	30	30	30	30	30	30	31	32	33	34	35	30	common name (serial number)
-		30 3a			03	55	04	03	13	11	30	30	3a	30	30	3a	43	41	3a	30	31	3a	common name (MAC address)
	81		50	71																			subject public key
	-	-																					info header
30	0d	06	09	2a	86	48	86	f7	0d	01	01	01	05	00									public key algorithm
	0.1	0.1	~ ~	~ ~	0.1	~ ~																	type
		8d																					public key header
	81															12							public key
		b1																					modulus
		34																					
		fd																					
		88															ac	54	ра	59	22	зe	
		90			ab	13	4d	31	ΤQ	40	/ L	að	ca	ee	uo	31							mulal i a laor
02	03	01	00	ΟT																			public key
20	0.7	0.0	0.0	0 -	0.0	4.0	0.0	<i>c</i> 7	0.7	0.1	0.1	0.5	0.5	0.0									exponent
		06						f7							5.0	6.6	6.0	0.0	0.5	0	0.1	<b>F</b> 1	Signature algorithm
		81																					signature value
		fa																					
		93																					
		30																					
		27 bf															13	ce	ab	/ I	21	ĽУ	
ст	ьe	bf	ΖĪ	15	TT	Уe	aУ	87	т9	сy	Γ⊥	ac	0 ک	80	aз	α5							

Some of the fields in this example are the same for all CM Certificates. These fields are:

- version: v3
- signature: SHA-1 with RSA, null parameters
- issuer first organizational unit name: "Data Over Cable System"
- public key algorithm type: RSA encryption, null parameters
- public key exponent: 3-octet integer, value 0x10001
- signature algorithm: SHA-1 with RSA, null parameters

The issuer name of the CM certificate matches the subject name of the CA certificate. In this example, the matching issuer-name fields are:

94

- country name: "US"
- organization name: "Nortel"
- first organizational unit name: "Data Over Cable System"
- second organizational unit name: "Building 1, Andover MA"
- common name: "Nortel Cable Modem Root Certificate Authority"

The other fields are example values. Some of these are:

- serial number: integer of 8 octets, value 0x010101010101010101. Other CM certificates may use a different length
- not before: 1999-03-23 16:58:34 GMT
- not after: 2049-12-31 23:59:50 GMT
- subject country name: "US"
- subject organization name: "Nortel"
- subject organizational unit name: "Building 1, Andover MA"
- subject first common name (serial number): "000000123456". Other CM certificates may use a different length string. The value matches the Serial Number attribute of the Authorization Request message
- subject second common name (MAC address): "00:00:CA:01:04:01". All CM certificates use a string of this length. The value matches the MAC Address attribute of the Authorization Request message
- public key modulus: integer of length 1 024 bits, value 0x00e0e0...d631. Other CM certificates may use an integer of length 768 bits or 1 024 bits
- signature value: bit string of length 1 024 bits, representing the integer value 0x0019b0...d3d5. Other CM certificates may use a bit string of length 1 024 bits to 2 048 bits, inclusive; the length matches that of the issuer's modulus. The signature is computed over the portion of the certificate that begins with the tbsCertificate header and ends with the public key exponent, inclusive.

# B.4 Authorization reply

The CMTS sends the following Authorization Reply:

05	72	00	9f																		Auth Reply header
07	00	80	a2	cb	ad	с8	34	27	71	47	06	d5	10	0c	07	94	90	bf	еб	44	Auth Key
1b	0c	90	0d	b4	ed	9c	39	aa	05	a0	cl	ef	54	4b	CC	fb	3a	7a	22	81	
с0	dc	сб	бe	39	a4	91	1c	ba	bf	b0	ed	47	10	f2	f4	13	f9	09	33	сб	
ae	a3	45	67	с8	38	0f	с3	9a	12	be	d5	27	27	39	77	fb	98	03	39	50	
39	99	f5	bб	ad	b5	85	f9	16	d0	ff	сб	2a	ff	9f	38	73	бf	35	44	21	
ad	9e	e1	a5	91	4d	34	06	1d	bb	с9	b6	8f	8a	17	9e	be	сб	с9	40	eb	
81	f0	62	d8	18																	
09	00	04	00	09	3a	80															Key Lifetime
0a	00	01	07																		Key Sequence number
17	00	0e																			SA Descriptor header
0c	00	02	22	60																	SAID
18	00	01	00																		SA Type
14	00	02	01	00																	Cryptographic Suite

The Code field has value 0x05, which identifies this as an Authorization Reply packet. The Identifier field has value 0x72, matching the Identifier field of the Authorization Request. The Length field has value 0x009f (159), which is the number of octets that follow the Length field.

The first attribute is the Authorization Key. The attribute contains an authorization key which has been RSA-encrypted using the public key in the Authorization Request message. The RSA-encrypted authorization key is an integer made up of 0x80 (128) octets. In this example, the value of the RSA-encrypted authorization key is:

95

0xa2cbadc8 ... f062d818.

Notice that 0xa2 is the most significant octet of the RSA-encrypted authorization key and 0x18 is the least significant. Details of the RSA encryption calculation are given below.

The second attribute is the Key Lifetime. In this example, the value is 0x00093a80 (604 800) s, or 7 days.

The third attribute is the Key Sequence Number. In this example, the value is 0x07.

The remaining attributes are SA Descriptors. Each SA Descriptor is a compound attribute consisting of the following sub-attributes: SAID, SA Type, and Cryptographic Suite. In this example, a single SA Descriptor is included, corresponding to the SAID in the Authorization Request. The SA Type is Primary, and the Cryptographic Suite is 56-bit DES with no authentication.

The CM and CMTS each derive a key encryption key and two message authentication keys from the authorization key, using hashing. Details of the hashing calculations are given below. Here are the values of these keys for this example:

Authorization key	_	85	27	ff	c4	12	72	8e	61	84	de	c9	20	b6	e0	64	f0	bc	0b
	75																		
Key encryption key	76	b4	d4	2f	14	98	59	ба	ab	fe	72	94	15	7c	7d	62			
Message authentication key,	fe	b9	f1	e2	46	a7	6d	7c	a7	7b	5e	b0	98	25	fd	0b	57	са	90
upstream	с7																		
Message authentication key,	93	d3	9d	70	с3	b6	f5	92	c4	6b	d3	92	76	46	f4	f1	90	3a	52
downstream	fd																		

## B.4.1 RSA encryption details

The CMTS generates a random authorization key of 20 octets. In this example, the value of the authorization key is:

4e 85 27 ff c4 12 72 8e 61 84 de c9 20 b6 e0 64 f0 bc 0b 75

The authorization key is encrypted using the RSAES-OAEP scheme in [21]. This clause gives details of the scheme as applied to this example. The scheme makes use of a Mask-Generating Function (MGF) which is based on hashing; details are given in a later clause.

The authorization key is padded into a 107-octet block DB:

DB =

To form DB, the authorization key is prefaced with an octet of value 1, and the result is placed in the last 21 octets of the block. The first 20 octets of the block are the result of performing a hash operation on a zero-length string; these 20 octets have the same value in every Authorization Reply and are not unique to this example. The remaining 66 octets of the block are set to 0.

The CMTS generates a random string of 20 octets called the SEED. The SEED is independently generated for each Authorization Reply. In this example, the SEED has value:

SEED = ad 9c af 8d f8 26 fe af b5 df fd 95 de 7e 97 cc e9 4b 6d 6d

The SEED is input to the MGF to generate DB\_MASK, a block of 107 octets:

DB\_MASK = de 10 c9 59 41 c9 ea 72 a4 35 68 79 d2 53 85 db 13 7b a6 3b 37 ac 86 06 7c b5 ec 97 d2 d0 9e 01 30 2b 10 91 3a ec 3f d9 a1 2f c4 e9 8d 18 88 95 f6 9c ea 17 23 9f 5d d5 f1 4d 25 8e 9e 6d 7d 3c ca 55 fe 0e ee 2d 0d 7e 5b 64 b6 79 44 76 c 3f 6e ac 99 3a ae 14 3e 9a 8e df 3c 36 79 58 b2 fa 13 72 58 4c ca 04 a1 af c7 c4 62 DB and DB\_MASK are exclusive-or'd together to produce MASKED\_DB, which has 107 octets:

MASKED\_DB =

04 29 6a b7 1f a2 a1 7f 96 60 d7 96 47 33 9d 2d bc a3 a1 32 37 ac 86 06 7c b5 ec 97 d2 d0 9e 01 30 2b 10 91 3a ec 3f d9 a1 2f c4 e9 8d 18 88 95 f6 9c ea 17 23 9f 5d d5 f1 4d 25 8e 9e 6d 7d 3c ca 55 fe 0e ee 2d 0d 7e 5b 64 b6 79 44 76 cc 3f 6e ac 99 3a ae 14 3f d4 0b f8 c3 f2 6b 2a 3c 9b 97 ac 91 6c 7c e4 c5 5f 7b cf 17

96

MASKED\_DB is input to the MGF to generate SEED\_MASK, a block of 20 octets:

SEED\_MASK =

b4 b6 f1 bf a6 b3 a1 7e 95 82 d3 b8 93 71 b6 7f 45 31 9e 82

SEED and SEED\_MASK are exclusive-or'd together to produce MASKED\_SEED, which has 20 octets:

MASKED\_SEED =

19 2a 5e 32 5e 95 5f dl 20 5d 2e 2d 4d 0f 2l b3 ac 7a f3 ef

MASKED\_SEED and MASKED\_DB are concatenated, and the result is prefaced with a single octet of value 0. This results in a 128-octet block called EM:

EM =

00 19 2a 5e 32 5e 95 5f d1 20 5d 2e 2d 4d 0f 21 b3 ac 7a f3 ef 04 29 6a b7 1f a2 al 7f 96 60 d7 96 47 33 9d 2d bc a3 al 32 37 ac 86 06 7c b5 ec 97 d2 d0 9e 01 30 2b 10 91 3a ec 3f d9 al 2f c4 e9 8d 18 88 95 f6 9c ea 17 23 9f 5d d5 f1 4d 25 8e 9e 6d 7d 3c ca 55 fe 0e ee 2d 0d 7e 5b 64 b6 79 44 76 cc 3f 6e ac 99 3a ae 14 3f d4 0b f8 c3 f2 6b 2a 3c 9b 97 ac 91 6c 7c e4 c5 5f 7b cf 17

To perform RSA encryption, EM is interpreted as the integer value:

0x00192a5e32 ... 5f7bcf17.

Notice that 0x00 is the most significant octet and 0x17 is the least significant.

The RSA encryption is performed as the operation  $Y = M^E \mod N$ , where:

M is the integer value of the block EM (0x00192a5e32 ... 5f7bcf17); E is the integer value of the exponent of the RSA public key (0x010001); N is the integer value of the modulus of the RSA public key (0xe0e06c8d ... caeed631); Y is the integer value of the RSA-encrypted authorization key (0xa2cbadc8 ... f062d818).

# B.4.2 RSA decryption details

Here is a table that lists the private-key parameters that match the RSA public key in the example Authorization Request message:

97

Parameter	Property									Va	lue								
D	$MDE \mod N = M$	6h	1 f	14	36	ec	77	7h	15				27	71	ae	92	62	3a	9f
(private exponent)		67					ca												
(privace emperienc)		25		d9			7b						67					16	
		ba					cd			18				56				16	
		ff	7d	d0	7e	01	8f	d4	84	d3	e8	eb	27	48	с3	6c	dc	a9	01
		b7	e5	24	28	d1	бc	67	03	a7	63	fb	fa	79	d8	08	бa	e1	de
		3d	12	7a	36	20	25	01	d1	08	11	0c	cd	80	44	3c	fd	c5	c4
		db	d1																
P	N = PQ	f1	6b	dd	2f	dd	d8	df	80	30	еб	9c	d3	4e	46	5e	9f	42	62
(prime factor)		b1	66	86	57	1b	са	87	9c	cf	fd	1c	b6	26	76	95	35	bf	0b
		fb	51	af	0f	46	1c	5e	cb	82	a0	83	bf	46	с9	3b	d6	4e	7a
		5d	bf	03	05	69	27	31	6d	65	bd								
Q	N = PQ	ee	74	cb	a3	d0	90	2d	8a	e9	e7	10	dd	b4	65	2e	91	22	09
(prime factor)		52	72		bd					d0								a4	
		b1	47	59	67	86	aб	8c	2c	cl	£3	8b	ba	8a	6b	b1	62	5d	43
		5a	71	db	d0	33	43	97	99	17	85								
Dp	$Dp = D \mod (P - 1)$	аб					aa												
(CRT exponent)		c1					17												
		93					15					93	33	dd	48	2e	2a	1d	5d
		a1		20		59				af									
Dq	$Dq = D \mod (Q - 1)$	cf	f1					b7		. –								48	
(CRT exponent)		36		f7			f1												
		e7					9a					4e	2c	93	4f	4c	b6	09	bc
		95					04												
Up	$PUp \mod Q = 1$	08		00			aa												
(CRT constant)		05					53												
		b0					14					a0	ae	1b	с9	80	88	be	42
		0a	52	4a	ef	62	3c	8b	dd	с5	37								

Each value in table represents the octets of an integer, with the most significant octet shown first. For example, the private exponent D has the integer value:

0x6b1f1d36 ... c5c4dbd1.

The CM can decrypt the authorization key with or without using the Chinese Remainder Theorem (CRT). Decryption using the CRT is more complicated, but it may be a faster operation.

To decrypt without using the CRT, the CM performs the operation  $M = Y^D \mod N$ . D is the private exponent in the table, and Y and N are as described in the preceding clause. The resulting value matches the value of M in the preceding clause, that is, it is the integer value the block EM formed by the CMTS. The CM decodes the authorization key from EM by inverting the procedure used by the CMTS to form EM, as described in [21].

To decrypt using the CRT, the CM first computes two intermediate quantities:

 $A = Y^{Dp} \bmod P;$ 

 $B = Y^{Dq} \bmod Q.$ 

P and Q are the prime factors of the modulus, and  $D_p$  and  $D_q$  are private exponents related to these factors, all with values shown in the table. The CM computes the value of M as:

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{A} + ((\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})\mathbf{U}_{\mathbf{n}} \mod \mathbf{Q})\mathbf{P};$$

 $U_p$  is a constant derived from the prime factors, with value as shown in the table. The resulting value of M matches the value that would be computed using the operation  $M = Y^D \mod N$ .

## B.4.3 Hashing details

The authorization key is hashed using the SHA-1 algorithm [12] to produce the key encryption key (KEK), the message authentication key for upstream, and the message authentication key for downstream.

The discussion here represents a hash calculation using a table that shows the input to the hash function and the resulting hash value. For reference, here is such a table that describes the example in annex B of [12]:

Hash	input	61	62	63	64	62	63	64	65	63	64	65	66	64	65	66	67	65	66	67	68	66	67	68	69	67
		68	69	ба	68	69	ба	6b	69	ба	бb	бc	ба	бb	бc	6d	6b	бc	6d	бe	бc	6d	бe	бf	6d	6e
		бf	70	бе	6f	70	71																			
Hash	value	84	98	3e	44	1c	3b	d2	бe	ba	ae	4a	a1	f9	51	29	e5	e5	46	70	f1					

### B.4.3.1 KEK

The KEK is computed using the following hash calculation:

																									53
	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53
	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	53	4e	85	27	ff	c4	12	72	8e	61	84	de
	с9	20	b6	e0	64	£0	bc	0b	75																
Hash value	76	b4	d4	2f	14	98	59	ба	ab	fe	72	94	15	7c	7d	62	b0	df	еб	3b					

The input is the octet 0x53, repeated 64 times, followed by the 20 octets of the authorization key. The order in which the octets of the authorization key are digested is the same as the order in which they appear in the EM encryption block.

The hash value is 20 bytes long. The first 16 bytes are the KEK.

### B.4.3.2 Message authentication keys

The upstream message authentication key is computed using the following hash calculation:

Hash input	5c																								
	5c																								
	5c	4e	85	27	ff	c4	12	72	8e	61	84	de													
	с9	20	b6	e0	б4	£0	bc	0b	75																
Hash value	fe	b9	f1	e2	46	a7	6d	7c	a7	7b	5e	b0	98	25	fd	0b	57	са	90	c7					

The input is the octet 0x5c, repeated 64 times, followed by the 20 octets of the authorization key. The order in which the octets of the authorization key are digested is the same as in the KEK calculation.

The hash value is 20 octets long. The 20 octets make up the upstream message authentication key.

The downstream message authentication key is computed using the following hash calculation:

	3a																								
	3a																								
	3a																								
	с9	20	b6	e0	64	f0	bc	0b	75																
Hash value	93	d3	9d	70	с3	b6	f5	92	c4	6b	d3	92	76	46	f4	f1	90	3a	52	fd					

This is similar to the computation for the upstream case, except that value 0x3a replaces value 0x5c.

### B.4.3.3 Mask-Generation Function (MGF)

The Mask-Generation Function (MGF) is built out of SHA-1 hash operations. Each hash operation generates 20 octets of mask data. The number of hash operations performed depends on the size of the mask that is needed.

98

Quantity SEED\_MASK is formed by applying the MGF to MASKED\_DB. Since SEED\_MASK is 20 octets long, this requires only one hash operation:

Ha	sh input	04	29	бa	b7	1f	a2	a1	7f	96	60	d7	96	47	33	9d	2d	bc	a3	a1	32	37	ac	86	06	7c
		b5	ec	97	d2	d0	9e	01	30	2b	10	91	3a	ec	3f	d9	a1	2f	c4	e9	8d	18	88	95	fб	9c
		ea	17	23	9f	5d	d5	f1	4d	25	8e	9e	6d	7d	3c	са	55	fe	0e	ee	2d	0d	7e	5b	64	b6
		79	44	76	CC	3f	бe	ac	99	3a	ae	14	3f	d4	0b	f8	c3	f2	6b	2a	3c	9b	97	ac	91	бс
		7c	e4	c5	5f	7b	cf	17	00	00	00	00														
Ha	sh value	b4	b6	f1	bf	aб	b3	a1	7e	95	82	d3	b8	93	71	b6	7f	45	31	9e	82					

The input data to the hash operation are the 107 octets MASKED\_DB followed by four octets of value 0. The output of the hash operation is the value of SEED\_MASK.

Quantity DB\_MASK is formed by applying the MGF to SEED. Since DB\_MASK is 107 octets long, this requires six hash operations:

Hash	input	ad	9c	af	8d	f8	26	fe	af	b5	df	fd	95	de	7e	97	CC	e9	4b	6d	6d	00	00	00	00
Hash	value	de	10	с9	59	41	с9	ea	72	a4	35	68	79	d2	53	85	bd	13	7b	aб	3b				
Hash	input	ad	9c	af	8d	f8	26	fe	af	b5	df	fd	95	de	7e	97	CC	e9	4b	6d	6d	00	00	00	01
Hash	value	37	ac	86	06	7c	b5	ec	97	d2	d0	9e	01	30	2b	10	91	3a	ec	3f	d9				
Hash	input	ad	9c	af	8d	f8	26	fe	af	b5	df	fd	95	de	7e	97	CC	e9	4b	6d	6d	00	00	00	02
Hash	value	al	2f	c4	e9	8d	18	88	95	f6	9c	ea	17	23	9f	5d	d5	f1	4d	25	8e				
Hash	input	ad	9c	af	8d	f8	26	fe	af	b5	df	fd	95	de	7e	97	CC	e9	4b	6d	6d	00	00	00	03
Hash	value	9e	6d	7d	3c	са	55	fe	0e	ee	2d	0d	7e	5b	64	b6	79	44	76	CC	3f				
		•																							
Hash	input	ad	9c	af	8d	f8	26	fe	af	b5	df	fd	95	de	7e	97	CC	e9	4b	6d	6d	00	00	00	04
Hash	value	6e	ac	99	3a	ae	14	3e	9a	8e	df	3c	36	79	58	b2	fa	13	72	58	4c				
					0.1	£ 0	26	£e	of	hE	df	fd	0 E	de	70	07		۵۵	1h	64	64	00	00	0.0	0 E
Hash	input	ad	9c	at	8a	Ι8	20	тe	aL	DD	αL	Ľα	95	ae	78	91	CC	67	40	υu	υu	00	00	00	05

The input data to each hash operation are the 20 octets of SEED followed by a four-octet value. The four-octet value counts the integer values 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 on successive hash operations. The outputs of the six hash operations are concatenated into a 120-octet result, and the first 107 octets of the result make up DB\_MASK.

# B.5 Key request

The CM sends the following Key Request:

07	73	00	d0																Key Request Header
05	00	ad																	CM-Identification header
01	00	0c	30	30	30	30	30	30	31	32	33	34	35	36					Serial Number
02	00	03	25	53	41														Manufacturer ID
03	00	06	00	00	са	01	04	01											MAC Address
04	00	8c	30	81	89	02	81	81	00	e0	e0	бc	8d	be	b2	8b	с9	f3	RSA public key
аб	3d	a1	12	ea	£7	99	f7	3d	3e	fa	a3	b1	e2	42	95	71	b5	71	
	32													- ·	. –				
	37																		
8a	fd					. –				9e	c2	22	aб	6b	9a	69	73	22	
d5		с9								16				30					
- ·	3b									96	61	db	£3	4a	37	18	4c	7f	
a8	ca	ee	d6	31	02	03	01	00	01										
0a	00	01	07																Key Sequence Number
0c	00	02	22	60															SAID
0b	00	14	86	b8	33	b7	48	9c	4b	al	51	67	44	d7	aб	еб	ca	21	HMAC digest
33	f5	22	9e																

The Code field has value 0x07, which identifies this as a Key Request packet. The Identifier field has value 0x73; this is an example value, obtained by incrementing the Identifier value in the Authorization Request. The Length field has value 0x00d0 (208), which is the number of octets that follow the Length field.

The first attribute is the CM Identification. This is a compound attribute, identical to that in the Authorization Request.

The second attribute is the Key Sequence Number, which identifies the authorization key. The value is identical to that in the Authorization Reply.

The third attribute is the SAID for which a key is being requested. This SAID value was contained in the Authorization Reply.

The final attribute is the HMAC Digest. The digest consists of 20 octets. It is computed using the upstream message authentication key. The digest is performed over all octets of the Key Request packet, excluding the 23 octets of the HMAC Digest attribute itself. Details of the digest calculation are given below.

# B.5.1 HMAC digest details

The HMAC digest is computed using the HMAC authentication method defined in [15], with SHA-1 as the hash function. Example calculations of HMAC using SHA-1 are presented in [16].

The discussion here represents an HMAC calculation using a table that shows the key, the input to the HMAC function, and the resulting HMAC digest. For reference, here is a table that describes test case #2 of the HMAC-SHA-1 examples in [16]:

Кеу	4a	65	66	65																					
HMAC input	77	68	61	74	20	64	6f	20	79	61	20	77	61	бe	74	20	66	бf	72	20	бе	6f	74	68	69
	бe	67	3f																						
HMAC digest	ef	fc	df	ба	e5	eb	2f	a2	d2	74	16	d5	f1	84	df	9c	25	9a	7c	79					

The HMAC digest of the Key Request packet is computed using the following HMAC calculation:

Кеу	fe	b9	f1	e2	46	a7	6d	7c	a7	7b	5e	b0	98	25	fd	0b	57	са	90	c7					
HMAC input	07	73	00	d0	05	00	ad	01	00	0c	30	30	30	30	30	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	02	00	03
	25	53	41	03	00	06	00	00	ca	01	04	01	04	00	8c	30	81	89	02	81	81	00	e0	e0	бс
	8d	be	b2	8b	c9	£3	aб	3d	al	12	ea	f7	99	f7	3d	3e	fa	a3	b1	e2	42	95	71	b5	71
	d2	32	7a	da	10	40	e2	5b	09	74	69	08	78	46	37	71	34	3e	69	a7	37	6d	f8	70	1d
	aa	a5	34	b0	33	a3	43	ac	4d	eb	41	5e	0a	8a	fd	aб	0a	4b	09	7f	5a	18	f2	9e	c2
	22	aб	6b	9a	69	73	22	d5	37	c9	63	b0	88	f5	60	5d	99	16	33	54	53	30	ed	35	de
	0c	87	3b	54	ba	59	22	3e	b2	79	90	96	61	db	f3	4a	37	18	4c	7f	a8	са	ee	d6	31
	02	03	01	00	01	0a	00	01	07	0c	00	02	22	60											
HMAC digest	86	b8	33	b7	48	9c	4b	a1	51	67	44	d7	aб	еб	ca	21	33	f5	22	9e					

The key is the upstream message authentication key. The input consists of all octets of the Key Request packet, excluding the HMAC Digest attribute. The octets of the digest are the contents of the HMAC Digest attribute.

# B.6 Key reply

The CMTS sends the following Key Reply:

08 73 00 68	Key Reply header
0a 00 01 07	Key Sequence Number
	(authorization key)
0c 00 02 22 60	SAID
0d 00 21	TEK Parameters header
08 00 08 b6 4d 54 8c 3f 6b 25 69	TEK Key
09 00 04 00 00 a8 c0	Key Lifetime
0a 00 01 02	Key Sequence Number (TEK)
Of 00 08 81 0e 52 8e 1c 5f da 1a	DES CBC IV
0d 00 21	TEK Parameters header
08 00 08 5e bd 03 aa 5e d5 e2 94	TEK Key
09 00 04 00 01 51 80	Key Lifetime
0a 00 01 03	Key Sequence Number (TEK)
Of 00 08 25 35 67 c3 09 21 8c 2c	DES CBC IV
Ob 00 14 a5 e3 33 25 ea 72 f8 50 1c 2a b6 65 45 6b cc de 8b 4f	HMAC Digest
22 02	

101

The Code field has value 0x08, which identifies this as a Key Reply packet. The Identifier has 0x73, matching the value in the Key Request. The Length field has value 0x68 (104), which is the number of octets that follow the Length field.

The Key Sequence Number attribute identifies the authorization key. It matches the value in the Key Request.

The SAID attribute identifies the SAID for with a TEK is being supplied. It matches the value in the Key Request.

Two TEK Parameters attributes are included, the first for the older generation of key parameters and the second for the newer. Each TEK Parameters attribute is a compound attribute consisting of the following sub-attributes: TEK Key, Key Lifetime, Key Sequence Number, and DES CBC IV.

The TEK Key consists of 8 octets. It contains the TEK, encrypted using triple-DES-ECB with the KEK derived from the authorization key. Details of the triple-DES-ECB calculation are given below.

The Key Lifetime sub-attribute refers to the TEK. In this example, the value for the older TEK is 0x0000a8c0 (43 200) seconds, or 12 hours, and the value for the newer TEK is 0x00015180 (86 400) s, or 24 hours.

The Key Sequence Number sub-attribute identifies the TEK. In this example, the value for the older TEK is 0x02, and the value for the newer TEK is 0x03.

The DES CBC IV sub-attribute consists of 8 octets. It specifies the Initialization Vector to be used with the TEK.

The final attribute is the HMAC Digest. It consists of 20 octets. It is computed in a manner similar to that in the Key Reply, except that the downstream message authentication key is used instead of the upstream key. Details of the HMAC calculation are given below.

After the CM processes the Key Reply packet, the CM and CMTS each share two generations of TEK and IV. Here are the values of these parameters for this example:

Older	TEK	еб	60	0f	d8	85	2e	f5	ab
Older	IV	81	0e	52	8e	1c	5f	da	1a
Newer	TEK	b1	d7	4f	C 9	64	68	f7	58
1.0.01		~ -	~ '		00	01	00	± /	50

# B.6.1 TEK encryption details

The CMTS generates a random TEK of 8 octets. In this example, the value of the TEK is:

e6 60 0f d8 85 2e f5 ab.

This is the first TEK of the Key Reply message.

The TEK is encrypted using triple-DES-ECB encryption. The encryption key is the KEK:

76 b4 d4 2f 14 98 59 6a ab fe 72 94 15 7c 7d 62.

Triple-DES-ECB encryption is described here in terms of several iterations of DES-ECB encryption or decryption. DES-ECB is defined in FIPS 81 [10].

The discussion here represents a DES-ECB encryption or decryption operation using a table that shows the key, the input, and the output. For reference, here are tables that describe the example in table B1 of FIPS 81 [10]:

Mode	ECB encryption
Кеу	01 23 45 67 89 ab cd ef
DES input	4e 6f 77 20 69 73 20 74
DES output	3f a4 0e 8a 98 4d 48 15

Mode				EC	Βd	ecr	ypti	ion	
Кеу	01	23	45	67	89	ab	cd	ef	
DES input	3f	a4	0e	8a	98	4d	48	15	
DES output	4e	бf	77	20	69	73	20	74	

NOTE: FIPS 81 [10] calls for the least significant bit of each octet in the key to be adjusted so that the octet has odd parity. This is evident in the key in the above example. The BPKM protocol does not require odd parity. BPKM generates and distributes 8-octet DES keys of arbitrary parity, and it requires that implementations ignore the value of the least significant bit of each octet.

The TEK is triple-DES-ECB encrypted using the following three DES-ECB operations:

Mode				EC	Ве	ncr	ypti	on	
Кеу	76	b4	d4	2f	14	98	59	ба	
DES input	еб	60	0f	d8	85	2e	f5	ab	
DES output	с3	94	31	f5	8d	f9	1d	bf	

Mode				EC	Βd	ecr	ypti	ion	
Кеу	ab	fe	72	94	15	7c	7d	62	
DES input	с3	94	31	f5	8d	£9	1d	bf	
DES output	44	b0	94	4e	ab	04	4c	23	

Mode				EC	Ве	ncr	ypti	ion	
Кеу	76	b4	d4	2f	14	98	59	ба	
DES input	44	b0	94	4e	ab	04	4c	23	
DES output	bб	4d	54	8c	3f	6b	25	69	

The first and third operations are DES-ECB encryption; the key for each is the first eight octets of the KEK. The second operation is DES-ECB decryption; the key is the last eight octets of the KEK. The input to the first operation is the TEK to be encrypted. The input to the second operation is the output of the first, and the input to the third operation is the output of the second. The output of the third operation is the encrypted TEK; this is conveyed in the TEK Key sub-attribute of the Key Reply message.

## B.6.2 HMAC details

The HMAC digest of the Key Reply packet is computed by a method similar to that of the Key Request packet. The key is the downstream message authentication key. Here are the details of the HMAC calculation:

Кеу	93	d3	9d	70	с3	b6	f5	92	c4	6b	d3	92	76	46	f4	f1	90	3a	52	fd					
HMAC input	08	73	00	68	0a	00	01	07	0c	00	02	22	60	0d	00	21	08	00	08	b6	4d	54	8c	3f	6b
	25	69	09	00	04	00	00	a8	сO	0a	00	01	02	0f	00	08	81	0e	52	8e	1c	5f	da	1a	0d
	00	21	08	00	08	5e	bd	03	aa	5e	d5	e2	94	09	00	04	00	01	51	80	0a	00	01	03	0f
	00	08	25	35	67	с3	09	21	8c	2c															
HMAC digest	a5	e3	33	25	ea	72	f8	50	1c	2a	b6	65	45	бb	CC	de	8b	4f	22	02					

# B.7 Packet PDU encryption

The first 12 octets of the Packet PDU, containing the Ethernet/802.3 destination and source addresses (DA/SA), are not encrypted. The remaining octets of the Packet PDU are encrypted using DES-CBC mode with special handling of residual termination blocks that are less than 64 bits. The combination of DES-CBC and residual block processing ensures that the encryption does not change the length of the packet. The encryption key is the TEK corresponding to the key sequence number of the packet's Privacy Extended Header.

103

The specification describes the residual block processing as follows:

'Given a final block having n bits, where n is less than 64, the next-to-last ciphertext block is DES encrypted a second time, using the ECB mode, and the least significant n bits of the result are exclusive ORed with the final n bits of the payload to generate the short final cipher block, etc. In the special case where the Packet Data PDU payload is less than 64 bits, the initialization vector is DES encrypted, and the leftmost n bits of the resulting ciphertext corresponding to the number of bits of the payload are exclusive ORed with the n bits of the payload to generate the short cipher block'.

An alternative description of this procedure, which is equivalent to the description in the specification, is as follows:

Given a final block having n bits, where n is less than 64, the n bits are padded up to a block of 64 bits by appending 64-n bits of arbitrary value to the right of the n payload bits. The resulting block is DES encrypted using the CFB64 mode, with the next-to-last ciphertext block serving as initialization vector for the CFB64 operation. The leftmost n bits of the resulting ciphertext are used as the short cipher block.... In the special case where the Packet Data PDU payload is less than 64 bits, the procedure is the same as for a short final block, with the provided initialization vector serving as the initialization vector for the DES-CFB64 operation.

The alternative description produces the same ciphertext as does the description in the specification. In the alternative description, however, no mention is made of combining ECB encryption with exclusive ORing. These operations are internal to CFB64, just as they are internal to CBC. The alternative description is convenient here because it allows residual block processing to be illustrated using CFB64 examples in FIPS 81 [10].

The Packet PDU includes the DA, SA, and Type/Len fields. In the examples here, no effort is made to use correct values for these fields. As a result, the examples here are not valid packets suitable for transmission. The intent of the examples is to illustrate encryption details only.

In these examples, the TEK and IV are taken from the example Key Reply packet described above.

# B.7.1 CBC only

When the number of octets to be encrypted is a multiple of 8, the encryption mode is DES-CBC as defined in FIPS 81 [10]. The encryption key and IV are as conveyed in the Key Reply packet.

The discussion here represents a DES-CBC encryption using a table that shows the key, IV, plaintext input, and ciphertext output. For reference, here is a table that describes the example in table C1 of FIPS 81 [10]:

Mode					(	СВС	;				
Кеу	01	23	45	67	89	ab	cd	ef			
IV	12	34	56	78	90	ab	cd	ef			
Plaintext	4e	6f	77	20	69	73	20	74	68	65	
	20	74	69	6d	65	20					
Ciphertext	e5	c7	cd	de	87	2b	f2	7c	43	e9	
	34	00	8c	38	9c	0f					

Suppose that the Packet PDU, prior to encryption, is as follows:

DA	01	02	03	04	05	06						
SA	f1	f2	£3	f4	f5	f6						
Type/Len	00	01										
User Data	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	0a	0b		
CRC	88	41	65	06								

The DES-CBC encryption is performed as follows:

Mode					(	СВС	)				
Кеу	еб	60	0f	d8	85	2e	f5	ab			
IV	81	0e	52	8e	1c	5f	da	1a			
Plaintext	00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	
	0a	0b	88	41	65	06					
Ciphertext	0d	da	5a	cb	d0	5e	55	67	9f	04	
	d1	b6	41	3d	4e	ed					

The Packet PDU, after encryption, looks like this:

DA	01	02	03	04	05	06						
SA	f1	f2	£3	f4	f5	f6						
Type/Len	0d	da										
User Data	5a	cb	d0	5e	55	67	9f	04	d1	b6		
CRC	41	3d	4e	ed								

# B.7.2 CBC with residual block processing

When the number of octets to be encrypted is greater than 8 and is not a multiple of 8, the encryption mode is a combination of DES-CBC and DES-CFB64.

Encryption begins in DES-CBC mode. DES-CBC is used to process as many complete DES blocks as are present. The encryption key and IV are as conveyed in the Key Reply packet.

After the DES-CBC encryption, there are 1 to 7 octets which have not been encrypted. These octets are encrypted using DES-CFB64 mode. DES-CFB64 is '64-bit Cipher Feedback Mode', defined in FIPS 81[10]. The encryption key is as in the Key Reply packet. The IV is the last 8 octets of ciphertext produced by the DES-CBC processing.

The discussion here represents a DES-CFB64 encryption using a table that shows the key, IV, plaintext input, and ciphertext output. For reference, here is a table that describes the example in table D3 of FIPS 81[10]:

Mode					С	FB6	64			
Кеу	01	23	45	67	89	ab	cd	ef		
IV	12	34	56	78	90	ab	cd	ef		
Plaintext	4e	6f	77	20	69	73	20	74	68	65
	20	74	69	6d	65	20				
Ciphertext	£3	09	62	49	c7	f4	6e	51	aб	9e
	83	9b	1a	92	f7	84				

Suppose that the Packet PDU, prior to encryption, is as follows:

DA	01	02	03	04	05	06							
SA	f1	f2	f3	f4	f5	f6							
Type/Len	00	01											
User Data	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	0a	0b	0c	0d	0e
CRC	91	d2	d1	9f									

The total number of octets to be encrypted is 19. The first 16 octets are processed using DES-CBC encryption, and the last 3 octets using DES-CFB64 encryption.

The DES-CBC encryption is performed as follows:

Mode					(	СВС	;				
Кеу	еб	60	0f	d8	85	2e	f5	ab			
IV	81	0e	52	8e	1c	5f	da	1a			
Plaintext	00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	
	0a	0b	0c	0d	0e	91					
Ciphertext	0d	da	5a	cb	d0	5e	55	67	51	47	
	46	86	8a	71	e5	77					

Mode					С	FB6	64		
Кеу	еб	60	0f	d8	85	2e	f5	ab	
IV	51	47	46	86	8a	71	e5	77	
Plaintext	d2	d1	9f	00	00	00	00	00	
Ciphertext	ef	ac	88	e8	ee	80	33	14	

The DES-CFB64 encryption is performed as follows:

The key is the same as used for the DES-CBC encryption operation. The IV is the last 8 octets of ciphertext generated by the DES-CBC operation.

Notice that 5 octets of value 0 have been appended to the 3 plaintext octets. The values of these appended plaintext octets have no effect on the values of the first 3 ciphertext octets, which are the only ciphertext octets we are interested in. Arbitrary values can be used instead of 0 for the appended plaintext octets.

The Packet PDU, after encryption, looks like this:

DA	01	02	03	04	05	06							
SA	f1	f2	£3	f4	f5	f6							
Type/Len	0d	da											
User Data	5a	cb	d0	5e	55	67	51	47	46	86	8a	71	e5
CRC	77	ef	ac	88									

# B.7.3 Runt frame

When the number of octets to be encrypted is less than 8, the encryption mode is DES-CFB64. The encryption key and IV are as conveyed in the Key Reply packet.

Suppose that the Packet PDU, prior to encryption, is as follows:

DA	01	02	03	04	05	06	
SA	f1	f2	£3	f4	f5	f6	
Type/Len	00	01					
User Data	02						
CRC	88	ee	59	7e			

The DES-CFB64 encryption is performed as follows:

Mode					С	FB6	64		
Кеу	еб	60	0f	d8	85	2e	f5	ab	
IV	81	0e	52	8e	1c	5f	da	1a	
Plaintext	00	01	02	88	ee	59	7e	00	
Ciphertext	17	86	a8	03	a0	85	75	01	

Notice that an octet of value 0 has been appended to the 7 plaintext octets. The value of this appended plaintext octet has no effect on the values of the first 7 ciphertext octets, which are the only ciphertext octets we are interested in. An arbitrary value can be used instead of 0 for the appended plaintext octet.

The Packet PDU, after encryption, looks like this:

DA	01	02	03	04	05	06	
SA	f1	f2	£3	f4	f5	f6	
Type/Len	17	86					
User Data	a8						
CRC	03	a0	85	75			

# B.7.4 40-bit key

The BPKM protocol always generates and distributes 56-bit DES keys. When 40-bit encryption is required, the 56-bit DES key is converted within an implementation to a 40-bit key by masking off (to zero) 16 of the 56 bits of a TEK.

A TEK has 8 octets, each octet containing 7 bits of key and 1 parity bit. Here is the procedure for converting a TEK to a 40-bit key:

106

- the first two octets of the TEK are set to 0;
- the two most significant bits of the third octet of the TEK are set to 0;
- the remaining five octets of the TEK are unchanged.

For example, if the TEK distributed by the BPKM protocol is:

ff ff ff ff ff ff ff ff,

then the conversion to 40 bits yields the TEK

00 00 3f ff ff ff ff ff.

Except for this conversion of the TEK value, the procedure for 40-bit encryption of a Packet PDU is identical to the case of 40-bit encryption.

To illustrate 40-bit encryption, a previous example of Packet PDU is repeated here, with the TEK converted to 40 bits.

Suppose that the Packet PDU, prior to encryption, is as follows:

DA	01	02	03	04	05	06							
SA	f1	f2	£3	f4	f5	f6							
Type/Len	00	01											
User Data	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	0a	0b	0c	0d	0e
CRC	91	d2	d1	9f									

The total number of octets to be encrypted is 19. The first 16 octets are processed using DES-CBC encryption, and the last 3 octets using DES-CFB64 encryption.

The DES-CBC encryption is performed as follows:

Mode					(	СВС	)			
Кеу	00	00	0f	d8	85	2e	f5	ab		
IV	81	0e	52	8e	1c	5f	da	1a		
Plaintext	00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09
	0a	0b	0c	0d	0e	91				
Ciphertext	44	с8	4a	41	14	67	56	a2	dc	64
	8f	b0	dc	1e	1e	86				

The key is the TEK conveyed in the Key Reply message, converted to a 40-bit key. The IV is as conveyed in the Key Reply message.

The DES-CFB64 encryption is performed as follows:

Mode					С	FB6	64	
Кеу	00	00	0f	d8	85	2e	f5	ab
IV	dc	64	8f	b0	dc	1e	1e	86
Plaintext	d2	d1	9f	00	00	00	00	00
Ciphertext	f1	42	aa	a3	e4	9b	eb	29

The key is the same as used for the DES-CBC encryption operation. The IV is the last 8 octets of ciphertext generated by the DES-CBC operation.

The Packet PDU, after encryption, looks like this:

DA	01	02	03	04	05	06							
SA	f1	f2	£3	f4	f5	f6							
Type/Len	44	с8											
User Data	4a	41	14	67	56	a2	dc	64	8f	b0	dc	1e	1e
CRC	86	f1	42	aa									

# B.8 Encryption of packet PDU with payload header suppression

These examples show how encryption is applied to a Packet PDU when Payload Header Suppression (PHS) is applied. The examples use an RTP Voice over IP payload. In the examples, no effort is made to use correct values for the fields of the Packet PDU. As a result, the examples here are not valid packets suitable for transmission. The intent of the examples is to illustrate encryption details only.

# B.8.1 Downstream

Suppose that the Packet PDU, after PHS and prior to encryption, is as follows:

DA	01	02	03	04	05	06							
SA	f1	f2	f3	f4	f5	f6							
RTP header	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	2a	2b	2c	
Voice data	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	3a			
CRC	93	86	b3	b9									

PHS has removed the Type/Len field that would otherwise be included in the Ethernet/802.3 header. The User Data consists of the RTP header and the voice data. Encryption is applied beginning with the first octet of the RTP header and ending with the last octet of the CRC, as follows:

Mode	CBC	2						
Кеу	еб	60	0f	d8	85	2e	f5	ab
IV	81	0e	52	8e	1c	5f	da	la
Plaintext	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
	29	2a	2b	2c	31	32	33	34
	35	36	37	38	39	3a	93	86
Ciphertext	b4	55	da	с8	39	1e	0c	ed
	-		b5					
	cf	0f	52	с0	69	f5	fб	бе

Mode	CFI	364						
Кеу	еб	60	0f	d8	85	2e	f5	ab
IV	cf	0f	52	сO	69	f5	f6	бе
Plaintext	b3	b9	00	00	00	00	00	00
Ciphertext	3e	31	de	ea	96	ба	88	бb

The Packet PDU, after encryption, looks like this:

DA	01	02	03	04	05	06								
SA	f1	f2	£3	f4	f5	f6								
RTP header	b4	55	da	с8	39	1e	0c	ed	15	cf	b5	79		
Voice data	0a	с3	24	5e	cf	0f	52	с0	69	f5				
CRC	f6	бe	3e	31										

# B.8.2 Upstream

Suppose that the Packet PDU, after PHS and prior to encryption, is as follows:

RTP header	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	2a	2b	2c
Voice data	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	3a		
CRC	65	cf	fe	89								

PHS has removed the DA, SA, and Type/Len fields that would otherwise be included in the Ethernet/802.3 header. The User Data consists of the RTP header and the voice data. The first 12 octets of the User Data are not encrypted. Encryption is applied beginning with the first octet of the voice data and ending with the last octet of the CRC, as follows:

108

Mode						CB	C	
Кеу	еб	60	0f	d8	85	2e	f5	ab
IV	81	0e	52	8e	1c	5f	da	la
Plaintext	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38
Ciphertext	d6	88	87	66	1f	66	04	79

Mode					(	CFB	64		
Кеу	еб	60	0f	d8	85	2e	f5	ab	
IV	d6	88	87	66	1f	66	04	79	
Plaintext	39	3a	65	cf	fe	89	00	00	
Ciphertext	с0	07	20	8e	3b	0b	b1	b9	

The Packet PDU, after encryption, looks like this:

RTP header	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	2a	2b	2c
Voice data	d6	88	87	66	1f	66	04	79	с0	07		
CRC	20	8e	3b	0b								

# B.9 Fragmented packet encryption

When a packet is fragmented, each fragment is independently encrypted using DES-CBC with residual block processing. The TEK and IV for each fragment are the same TEK and IV used for encrypting an unfragmented Packet PDU. All octets of a fragment are encrypted, including the 12 octets carrying the Ethernet/802.3 destination and source addresses (DA/SA) of the Packet PDU.

In the example here, no effort is made to use meaningful values for the fields of the packet. As a result, the example here is not a valid packet suitable for transmission. The intent of the example is to illustrate encryption details only.

In this example, the TEK and IV are taken from the example Key Reply packet described above.

Suppose that packet is divided into two fragments, as follows:

Fragment 1	. payload	01	02	03	04	05	06	f1	f2	f3	f4	f5	f6	00	01	02	03	04	05
Fragment 1	CRC	b4	2b	6d	d4														

Fragment	2	payload	06	07	80	09	0a	0b	0c	0d	
Fragment	2	CRC	48	34	45	36					

The first fragment is encrypted using DES-CBC and DES-CFB64, as follows:

Mode									(	СВС	)						
Кеу	еб	60	0f	d8	85	2e	f5	ab									
IV	81	0e	52	8e	1c	5f	da	1a									
Plaintext	01	02	03	04	05	06	f1	f2	£3	f4	f5	f6	00	01	02	03	
Ciphertext	47	41	0f	4f	fd	78	47	бe	с8	1a	67	4e	26	0c	20	с5	

Mode						CFE	364	
Кеу	еб	60	0f	d8	85	2e	f5	ab
IV	с8	1a	67	4e	26	0c	20	c5
Plaintext	04	05	b4	2b	6d	d4	00	00
Ciphertext	56	6d	5c	58	2f	56	dc	39

109

The first fragment, after encryption, looks like this:

Fragment	1	payload	47	41	0f	4f	fd	78	47	бе	с8	1a	67	4e	26	0c	20	c5	56	6d
Fragment	1	CRC	5c	58	2f	56														

The second fragment is encrypted using DES-CBC and DES-CFB64, as follows:

Mode		CBC								
Кеу	еб	60	0f	d8	85	2e	f5	ab		
IV	81	0e	52	8e	1c	5f	da	1a		
Plaintext	06	07	08	09	0a	0b	0c	0d		
Ciphertext	d8	55	0f	59	9d	19	d9	сб		

Mode					C	FB6	64		
Кеу	еб	60	0f	d8	85	2e	f5	ab	
IV	d8	55	0f	59	9d	19	d9	сб	
Plaintext	48	34	45	36	00	00	00	00	
Ciphertext	b4	5f	3e	95	0e	e4	d7	df	

The second fragment, after encryption, looks like this:

Fragment	2	payload	d8	55	0f	59	9d	19	d9	сб	
Fragment	2	CRC	b4	5f	3e	95					

# Annex C (informative): BPI/BPI+ interoperability

Baseline Privacy Plus is an enhancement to the original requirements of Baseline Privacy. The specification has added improvements where needed to increase system security and to address performance concerns in the original specification. The original architecture and design of Baseline Privacy has been maintained where possible.

110

The evolution to Data Over Cable System 1.1 features and Baseline Privacy Plus was not intended to immediately obsolete DOCSIS 1.0 systems and the use of Baseline Privacy. A Data Over Cable System system's transition to Data Over Cable System 1.1 compliance may be incremental. In the meantime and thereafter, DOCSIS 1.0 Baseline Privacy and Data Over Cable System 1.1 Baseline Privacy Plus units may coexist within a Data Over Cable System system.

# C.1 Data Over Cable System v1.0/v1.1 interoperability

BPI/BPI+ Interoperability requirements are a subset of overall Data Over Cable System v1.0/v1.1 Interoperability requirements defined in annex G of ES 201 488-2 [2]. Interoperability requirements defined by ES 201 488-2 [2] for provisioning and registration should be followed.

# C.2 Data Over Cable System BPI/BPI+ Interoperability Requirements

BPI/BPI+ interoperability requirements are summarized in the following table. A Baseline Privacy Plus system SHOULD be backward compatible with Baseline Privacy according to this table. There are four unit capabilities defined here from the Baseline Privacy specification and supported by these interoperability requirements.

- 1) Cable Modem Termination System:
  - a) CMTS BPI: Baseline Privacy with 56-bit DES, and will accept both a 768 bits and 1 024 bit public key modulus.
  - b) CMTS BPI 40bit: Baseline Privacy with 40-bit DES, and will accept both a 768 bits and 1 024 bit public key modulus. DES can only operate in 40-bit mode.
- 2) Cable Modem:
  - a) CM BPI: Baseline Privacy with 56-bit DES, and either a 768 bits or 1 024 bit public key modulus.
  - b) CM BPI 40bit: Baseline Privacy with 40-bit DES, and either a 768 bits or 1 024 bit public key modulus. DES can only operate in 40-bit mode.

As defined in the present document, Baseline Privacy Plus introduces two additional unit types.

- 1) CMTS BPI+: Baseline Privacy Plus with 56-bit DES, and will accept both a 768 bits and 1 024 bit public key modulus.
- 2) CM BPI+: Baseline Privacy Plus with 56-bit DES, and a 1 024 bit public key modulus.

The CMTS and the CM negotiate the BPI/BPI+ compatible mode using the Privacy Support Modem Capability TLV (type 5.6) in the REG-REQ and REG-RSP messages. The requirements for BPI/BPI+ interoperability are:

- a) A CMTS MUST accept public keys with a modulus of both 768 bits and 1 024 bits from a CM during authorization.
- b) If a CM with Baseline Privacy Plus (CM BPI+) is provisioned with a DOCSIS 1.0 style configuration file, the CM sets the Privacy Support Modem Capability TLV (type 5.6) to either BPI Support (0) or BPI+ Support (1) depending on its capability in that situation (see ES 201 488-2 [2], clause G.2.1).

- c) When a CMTS with Baseline Privacy Plus (CMTS BPI+) receives the Privacy Support Modem Capability TLV set to BPI Support (type 5.6, value 0) or no type 5.6 TLV in the REG-REQ message from the CM, the CMTS MUST fall back into a Baseline Privacy compatible mode of operation [4] for communications with that CM.
- d) When a CMTS with Baseline Privacy Plus is operating in a system that supports both BPI and BPI+ CMs, the TFTP server MUST include the following two kinds of configuration files;
  - Configuration file with all of the BPI parameters (type 17.1 through 17.7) for the CMs provisioned to operate in BPI mode; and
  - Configuration file with all of or a part of the BPI+ parameters for the CMs provisioned to operate in BPI+ mode.
- e) When a CM with Baseline Privacy Plus (CM BPI+) receives the Privacy Support Modem Capability TLV set to BPI Support (type 5.6, value 0) or no type 5.6 TLV in the REG-RSP message from the CMTS, the CM MUST fall back into a Baseline Privacy mode of operation [4] to communicate with the CMTS.

Note that, as specified in annex D, the 1.1 CM always verifies downloaded operational software as specified in annex D regardless of the Privacy Support setting (type 5.6) in the REG-RSP message and the Privacy Enable setting (type 4.7 or 29) in the CM configuration file.

	CM BPI	CM BPI 40bit	CM BPI+
CMTS BPI	Domestic BPI configuration. 768-bit or 1 024-bit RSA modulus	768 bit or 1 024 bit RSA modulus. CMTS software zeros TEK bits to 40-bit standard	CM falls back into BPI mode with 1 024-bit RSA modulus
CMTS BPI-40bit	768 bit or 1 024 bit RSA modulus. CMTS software zeros TEK bits to 40-bit standard	768 bit or 1 024 bit RSA modulus. All 40-bit compatibility handled by MAC chips	CM falls back into BPI mode with 1 024-bit RSA modulus. CMTS software zeros TEK bits to 40-bit standard
CMTS BPI+	CMTS falls back into BPI mode. 768 bit or 1 024-bit RSA modulus	768 bit or 1 024 bit RSA modulus. CMTS software zeros TEK bits to 40-bit standard	Full BPI+ mode or BPI mode depending on configuration file and CMTS setting. 1 024-bit RSA modulus

#### Table C.1: BPI/BPI+ interoperability matrix

# C.3 BPI 40-bit DES export mode considerations

The Baseline Privacy Plus specification is backward compatible with the 40-bit DES export mode of Baseline Privacy. The burden of compliance is placed on the CMTS. Not all Data Over Cable System equipment vendors will ever have the need to operate in a system with 40-bit DES capable BPI units. Therefore, compliance is up to the individual CMTS manufacturer. A CMTS SHOULD support backward compatibility to 40-bit DES Baseline Privacy. If it does, it MUST do so according to the present document.

- a) When a CMTS is sending or receiving encrypted data between itself and a CM that uses 40-bit DES, the CMTS MUST zero the appropriate bits of its TEKs before encrypting or decrypting corresponding traffic data. The appropriate bits of the TEK MUST be zeroed according to the 40-bit TEK requirement of Baseline Privacy.
- b) When encrypted traffic is to be passed between a CMTS with only 40-bit DES capability and a CM with a 56-bit DES capability, the CMTS MUST provide a 40-bit compliant TEK in the Key Reply Message to the CM.

The method a CMTS uses to recognize which CMs in a system are capable of 56-bit DES or only 40-bit DES, is left up to the individual system operator and CMTS vendor to accomplish in the manner that best fits their situation. One method for obtaining this information would be from the CM vendors, based on CM serial numbers, MAC address, manufacture dates, or some other device tracking mechanism. Once collected, the information would be incorporated into the CMTS database of information stored on each CM.

An alternative method for obtaining this information is with a Data Over Cable System BPI MIB defined for this purpose.

# C.4 System operation

## C.4.1 CMTS with BPI capability

A CMTS with BPI capability will always provision CMs using DOCSIS 1.0 style TFTP configuration files and BPI configuration settings. Both the BPI and BPI+ CMs will receive the BPI settings and each CM will only attempt to register as a DOCSIS 1.0 CM with BPI capability. If a CM returns a Modem Capability of BPI+ in the registration request, the CMTS will respond with this capability removed and force the CM to BPI compatibility.

## C.4.2 CMTS with BPI+ capability

A CMTS with Data Over Cable System 1.1 BPI+ capability MUST be capable of operating in both BPI and BPI+ compatible modes and to adjust according to the capability of each client CM. When the CMTS has BPI+ capability and the system simultaneously supports BPI and BPI+ CMs, both DOCSIS 1.0 and Data Over Cable System 1.1 configuration files MUST be available to deliver the BPI+ and BPI configuration settings to the appropriate CMs. A BPI capable CM will receive a DOCSIS 1.0 configuration file with BPI settings. It will then register with BPI Modem Capability.

# Annex D (normative): Verifying downloaded operational software

# D.1 Introduction

The Data Over Cable System supports the remote downloading of code to its network cable modems. The source and integrity of the downloaded code is important to the overall operation and security of the Data Over Cable System system.

113

The software download module is an attractive target for an attacker. If an attacker were able to mount a scalable attack against the software download module, he could potentially install code to disable all the CMs within a domain, or disrupt service on a wide scale. To thwart these attacks, the attacker must be forced to overcome several security barriers.

# D.2 Overview

The requirements defined in this clause address these primary security goals for the code download process:

- The CM should have a means to authenticate that the originator of any download code is a known and trusted source.
- The CM should have a means to verify that the downloaded code has not been altered from the original form in which it was provided by the trusted source.
- The process should strive to simplify the MSO's code file handling requirements and provide mechanisms for the MSO to upgrade or downgrade the code version of cable modems on their network.
- The process must also allow the option for an MSO to dictate and control their own policies first-hand, with respect to (a) which code files will be accepted by cable modems within their network domain, and (b) security controls defining the security of the process on their network.
- Cable modems must be able to move freely between systems controlled by different MSO organizations.
- Root CA Public Key (optional): an updated Root CA Public Key that replaces the Root CA Public Key currently stored in the CM.
- Manufacturer Certificate(s) (optional): One or more X.509 compliant Manufacturer Certificate(s) that replaces the Manufacturer Certificates currently stored in the CM.

The present document limits its scope to these primary system security requirements, but acknowledges that in some cases additional security may be desired. The concerns of individual MSOs or cable modem manufacturers may result in additional security related to the distribution and installation of code into a cable modem or other Data Over Cable System network element. The present document does not restrict the use of further protections, as long as they do not conflict with the intent and guidelines of the present document.

There are multiple levels of protection required to successfully protect and verify the code download.

- The manufacturer of the CM code always applies a digital signature to the code file; a signature that is verified with a certificate chain that extends up to the Data Over Cable System root. The manufacturer's signature authenticates the source and integrity of the code file to the CM. Additional control parameters are included in the code file to control access to the CM.
- Though the manufacturer must always sign their code file, an MSO may later apply their code signature in addition to the manufacturer's signature. The CM must verify both signatures with a certificate chain that extends up to the Data Over Cable System root before accepting a code file.

• OSS mechanisms for the provisioning and control of the CM are important to the proper execution of this process. The code upgrade capability of a CM is enabled during the provisioning and registration process. Code downloads are initiated during the provisioning and registration process; or can be initiated in normal operation using an SNMP command.

The code file is built using a PKCS#7 compliant structure that has been defined in a specific format for use with Data Over Cable System cable modems. Included in the Data Over Cable System PKCS#7 structure is the:

- Code image: the upgrade code image.
- Code Verification Signature (CVS): the digital signature over the code image and any other authenticated attributes as defined in the Data Over Cable System PKCS#7 structure.
- Code Verification Certificate (CVC): an X.509 compliant certificate structure that is used to deliver and validate the public code verification key that will verify the signature over the code image. The Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority, a trusted party, whose public key is already stored in the cable modem, signs the certificate. The X.509 certificate is defined in a specific format for use with Data Over Cable System cable modems.

Figure D.1 shows the basic steps required for the signing of a code image when the code file is signed only by the CM manufacturer; and when the code file is signed by the CM manufacturer and co-signed by an MSO.

In the Data Over Cable System system each cable modem will receive a trusted public key from the Data Over Cable System Root Certificate Authority. The code manufacturer will build the code file by signing the code image using a Data Over Cable System PKCS#7 digital signature structure with a Data Over Cable System X.509 certificate. The code file is then sent to the MSO. The MSO, in possession of a Data Over Cable System root public key, SHOULD verify that the code file is from a trusted Data Over Cable System manufacturer and has not been modified. At this point, the MSO has the option of loading the code file on the tftp server as-is, or adding their signature and their MSO CVC to the code file. During the code upgrade process, the CM will access the code file from the tftp server and verify the code image before installing.

While the Data Over Cable System Root CA for the cable modem certificate chain currently serves as the Root CA for the Secure Software Download, the different Root CA may be used in the future. Therefore, the CM MUST NOT assume that the Manufacturer CVC and Co-signer CVC are issued by the Data Over Cable System Root CA for the cable modem certificate chain.

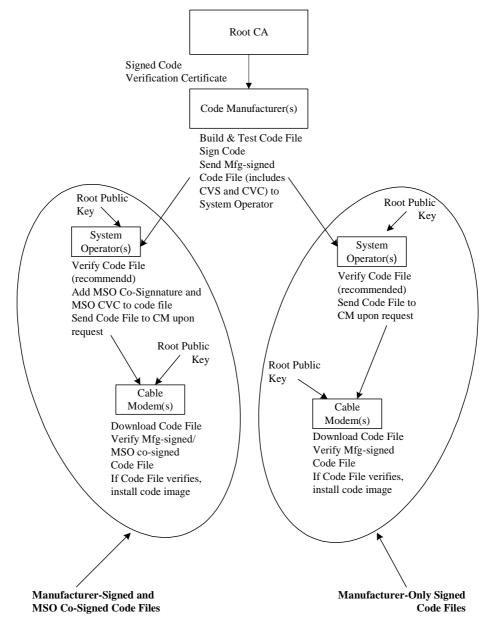


Figure D.1: Typical code validation hierarchy

# D.3 Code upgrade requirements

The following clauses define requirements in support of the code upgrade verification process. All Data Over Cable System 1.1 code upgrades MUST be prepared and verified as defined in the present document. All Data Over Cable System 1.1 certified cable modems MUST verify code upgrades according to the present document, regardless of whether it is operating in a Data Over Cable System 1.1 or DOCSIS 1.0 compliant mode. All Data Over Cable System 1.1 certified cable modems MUST verify code upgrades according to the present document regardless of whether it is operating in a Data Over Cable System 1.1 or DOCSIS 1.0 compliant mode. All Data Over Cable System 1.1 certified cable modems MUST verify code upgrades according to the present document regardless of whether Baseline Privacy is enabled or disabled.

### D.3.1 Code file requirements

A single file is used to encapsulate the code for the cable modem. The code file is a Data Over Cable System PKCS#7 signed data message that includes:

- 1) the Manufacturer's Code Verification Signature (CVS);
- 2) the Manufacturer's Code Verification Certificate (CVC) signed by the Data Over Cable System root CA;
- 3) the code image (compatible with the destination cable modem) as signed content;
- 4) optionally, when the MSO co-signs the code file:
  - a) the MSOs CVS;
  - b) the MSOs CVC signed by the Data Over Cable System root CA.
- 5) optional Root CA Public Key for the CVC verification;
- 6) optional Manufacturer Certificate(s).

The code file MUST comply with [24] and MUST be DER encoded. The code file MUST match the structure shown in table D.1. An example is shown in annex B.

Code File	Description
PKCS#7 Digital Signature{	
ContentInfo	
contentType	SignedData
SignedData()	EXPLICIT signed-data content value; includes CVS and X.509 CVC
}	
SignedContent{	
DownloadParameters {	Mandatory TLV format (Type 28) defined in clause 7.2.2.28. (Length is zero if there is no sub-TLVs).
RootCAPublicKey()	Optional TLV for the Root CA Public Key for CVC Verification, formatted according to the RSA-Public-Key TLV format (Type 4) defined in clause 7.2.2.4.
MfgCerts()	Optional TLV for one or more DER-encoded Manufacturer Certificate(s) each formatted according to the CA-Certificate TLV format (Type 17) defined in clause 7.2.2.17.
}	
Codelmage()	Upgrade code image
}	

#### Table D.1: Code file structure

If when downloading the Root CA Public Key and/or the Manufacturer Certificate as a part of the CM Code File, the Root CA Public Key and/or the Manufacturer CA Certificates MAY be contained in the RootCAPublicKey field and/or the MfgCerts field as specified in table D.1 respectively, and separated from the actual cable modem code image contained in the CodeImage field.

This makes it possible to clearly discriminate the code image from other parameters in the code download file. This makes it possible to change the Root CA Public Key, the Manufacturer CA Certificates or SignedData parameters in the code download file without disrupting or changing the code image that the cable modem will receive. This allows one to verify that the code image has not changed even though the code download file changed because of a change in the Root CA Public Key, the Manufacturer CA Certificates or SignedData parameters.

### D.3.1.1 Data Over Cable System PKCS#7 signed data

The software upgrade file will contain the information in a PKCS#7 Signed Data content type as shown below. Though maintaining compliance to [24], the structure used by Data Over Cable System has been restricted in format to ease the processing a CM does to validate the signature. The PKCS#7 Signed Data MUST be DER encoded and exactly match the structure shown in table D.3 except for any change in order required to DER encode (e.g. the ordering of SET OF attributes). The CM SHOULD reject the PKCS#7 signature if the PKCS#7 Signed Data does not match the DER encoded structure represented in table D.2.

#### D.3.1.1.1 Code signing keys

The PKCS#7 digital signature uses the RSA Encryption Algorithm [21] with SHA-1 [13]. The RSA key modulus for code signing is 1 024-bits, 1536-bits, or 2 048-bits in length. The CM MUST be able to verify Data Over Cable System code file signatures that are signed using either modulus size. The public exponent is F4 (65 537 decimal).

PKCS#7 Field	Description
Signed Data {	
version	version = 1
digestAlgorithmIdentifiers	SHA-1
contentInfo	
contentType	data (SignedContent is concatenated at the end of the PKCS#7 structure)
certificates {	DOCS Code Verification Certification (CVC)
mfgCVC	REQUIRED for all code files
msoCVC	OPTIONAL; required for MSO co-signatures
} end certificates	
SignerInfo{	
MfgSignerInfo {	REQUIRED for all code files
version	version = 1
issuerAndSerialNumber issuerName	from the signer's certificate distinguished name of the certificate issuer
	US
CountryName organizationName	Data Over Cable Service Interface Specifications
organizationalUnitName	Cable Modems
commonName	DOCS Cable Modem Root Certificate Authority
certificateSerialNumber	from CVC; Integer, size (120) octets
digestAlgorithm	SHA-1
authenticatedAttributes	
contentType	data; contentType of signedContent
signingTime	UTCTime (GMT), YYMMDDhhmmssZ
messageDigest	digest of the content as defined in [24]
digestEncryptionAlgorithm	rsaEncryption
encryptedDigest	
} end mfg signer info	
MsoSignerInfo {	OPTIONAL; required for MSO co-signatures
version	version = 1
issuerAndSerialNumber	from the signer's certificate
issuerName	distinguished name of the certificate issuer
CountryName	US
organizationName	Data Over Cable Service Interface Specifications
organizationalUnitName	Cable Modems
commonName	DOCS Cable Modem Root Certificate Authority
certificateSerialNumber	from CVC; Integer, size (120) octets
digestAlgorithm	SHA-1
authenticatedAttributes	
contentType	data; contentType of signedContent
signingTime	UTCTime (GMT), YYMMDDhhmmssZ
messageDigest	digest of the content as defined in [24]
digestEncryptionAlgorithm	rsaEncryption
encryptedDigest	
} end mso signer info	
} end signer info	
} end signed data	

#### Table D.2: DOCS PKCS#7 signed data

118

#### D.3.1.1.2 Code Verification Certificate Format

The format used for the CVC is X.509 compliant. However, in this case, the X.509 structure has been restricted to ease the processing a CM does to validate the certificate and extract the public key used to verify the CVS. The CVC MUST be DER encoded and exactly match the structure shown in table D.3 except for any change in order required to DER encode (e.g. the ordering of SET OF attributes). The CM SHOULD reject the CVC if it does not match the DER encoded structure represented in table D.3.

The CVC also requires the addition of the Key Purpose ID for "code-signing" within an Extended Key Usage field.

```
-- extended key usage extension OID and syntax
id-ce-exKeyUsage OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= {id-ce 37}
ExtKeyUsageSyntax ::= SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF KeyPurposeId
KeyPuposeID ::= OBJECT IDENTIFIER
```

The Data Over Cable System CVC MUST contain one, and only one, extension field: the extended key usage extension. The extended key usage extension MUST be flagged as critical. The key usage extension MUST contain the code purpose OID for code signing. If the extended key usage extension is not present, or is not flagged critical, or includes any key purpose OID other than, or in addition to, the code-signing purpose ID, the CM MUST halt the validation process and discard the CVC.

-- extended key purpose OIDs

id-kp-codeSigning OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { id-kp 3 }

X.509 Certificate Field	Description
Certificate {	
tbsCertificate	
version	v3(2)
serialNumber	Integer, size (120) octets
signature	SHA-1 with RSA, null parameters
issuer	
countryName	US (see note 1)
organizationName	Data Over Cable Service Interface Specifications (see note 2)
organizationalUnitName	Cable Modems
commonName	Data Over Cable System Cable Modem Root Certificate Authority (see note 3)
validity	
notBefore	utcTime (GMT), YYMMDDhhmmssZ
notAfter	utcTime (GMT), YYMMDDhhmmssZ
subject	
countryName	<country company="" of="" subject=""></country>
organizationName	<subject agent="" code-signing=""></subject>
organizationalUnitName	Data Over Cable System (see note 4)
commonName	Code Verification Certificate
subjectPublicKeyInfo	
algorithm	RSA encryption, null parameters
subjectPublicKey	1 024-bit, 1 536-bit, or 2 048-bit modulus
extensions	
extKeyUsage	
critical	true
keypurposeld	id-kp-codeSigning
signatureAlgorithm	SHA-1 with RSA, null parameters
signature Value	
} end certificate	
NOTE 1: For tComLabs - Euro-DC	
	DCSIS, replace with 'tComLabs - Euro-DOCSIS'.
	DCSIS, replace with 'Euro-DOCSIS Cable Modem Root CA'.
NOTE 4: For tComLabs - Euro-DC	DCSIS, replace with 'EuroDOCSIS'.

#### Table D.3: Data Over Cable System X.509 Compliant Code Verification Certificate

#### D.3.1.1.3 Certificate revocation

The present document does not require or define the use of Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs). The cable modem is not required to support CRLs. MSOs may want to define and use CRLs outside of the Data Over Cable System HFC network to help manage code files provided to them by manufacturers.

120

However, there is a method for revoking certificates based on the validity start date of the certificate (described in clause D 3.2.2). This method requires that an updated CVC be delivered to the cable modem with an updated validity start time. Once the CVC is successfully validated, the X.509 validity start time will update the CM's current value of cvcAccessStart.

To expedite the delivery of an updated CVC without requiring the cable modem to process a code upgrade, the CVC MAY be delivered in either the CM's configuration file or an SNMP MIB. The format of a Data Over Cable System CVC is the same whether it is in a code file, configuration file, or SNMP MIB.

### D.3.1.2 Signed content

The signed content field of the code file contains the code image and the download parameters field, which possibly contains two additional optional items - a Data Over Cable System Root CA Public key and Manufacturer Certificate.

The final code image is in a format compatible with the destination cable modem. In support of the PKCS#7 signature requirements, the code content is typed as data; i.e. a simple octet string. The format of the final code image is not specified here and will be defined by each manufacturer according to their requirements.

Each manufacturer SHOULD build their code with additional mechanisms that verify an upgrade code image is compatible with the destination cable modem. The CM SHOULD NOT install the upgraded code image unless the code image has been verified as being compatible with the CM.

If included in the signed content field, the Data Over Cable System Root CA Public key is intended to replace the Data Over Cable System Root CA Public key currently stored in the CM. If the code download and installation specified in clause D.3.5.1 is successful, then the CM MUST replace its currently stored Data Over Cable System Root CA Public key with the Data Over Cable System Root CA Public key received in the signed content field. This new Data Over Cable System Root CA Public key will then be used for subsequent CVC verification.

If included in the signed content field, the Manufacturer Certificate(s) is intended to replace the Manufacturer Certificate(s) currently stored in the CM. If the code download and installation specified in clause D.3.5.1 is successful, then the CM MUST replace its currently stored Manufacturer Certificate(s) with the Manufacturer Certificate(s) received in the signed content field. The new Manufacturer Certificate(s) will then be sent to the CMTS during the subsequent BPI+ initialization.

## D.3.2 Code file access controls

In addition to the cryptographic controls provided by the digital signature and the X.509 certificate, special control values are included in the code file for the cable modem to check before it will validate a code image. The conditions placed on the values of these control parameters MUST be satisfied before the CM will validate the CVC or the CVS, and accepts the code image.

### D.3.2.1 Subject organization names

The cable modem will recognize up to two names, at any one time, that it considers a trusted code-signing agent in the subject field of a code file CVC. These include:

• The cable modem manufacturer: The manufacturer name in the manufacturer's CVC subject field MUST exactly match the manufacturer name stored in the CM's non-volatile memory by the manufacturer. A manufacturer CVC MUST always be included in the code file.

• A co-signing agent: Data Over Cable System and the manufacturer allows another trusted organization to co-sign code files destined for their cable modems. In most cases this is the MSO controlling the current operating domain of the cable modem. The organization name of the co-signing agent is communicated to the cable modem via a co-signer's CVC in the configuration file when initializing the cable modem's code verification process. The co-signer's organization name in the co-signer's CVC subject field MUST exactly match the co-signer's organization name previously received in the co-signer's initialization CVC and stored by the CM.

The CM MAY compare organization names using a binary comparison.

### D.3.2.2 Time varying controls

In support of the code upgrade process, The CM MUST keep two UTC time values associated with each code-signing agent. One set MUST always be stored and maintained for the cable modem's manufacturer. While the cable modem is assigned a code co-signing agent, the cable modem MUST also store and maintain a separate set of time values for the co-signing agent.

These values are used to control code file access to the cable modem by individually controlling the validity of the CVS and the CVC. These values are:

codeAccessStart: a 12-byte UTC time value referenced to Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).

cvcAccessStart: a 12-byte UTC time value referenced to GMT.

UTCTime values in the CVC MUST be expressed as Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) and MUST include seconds. That is, they MUST be expressed in the following form: YYMMDDhhmmssZ. The year field (YY) MUST be interpreted as follows:

- Where YY is greater than or equal to 50, the year shall be interpreted as 19YY.
- Where YY is less than 50, the year shall be interpreted as 20YY.

These values will always be referenced to Greenwich Mean Time (GMT), so the final ASCII character (Z) can be removed when stored by the CM as codeAccessStart and cvcAccessStart. The CM MUST maintain each of these time values in a format that contains equivalent time information and accuracy to the 12 character UTV format (i.e. YYMMDDhhmmss). The CM MUST accurately compare these stored values with UTC time values delivered to the CM in a CVC. These requirements are discussed later in the present document.

The values of codeAccessStart and cvcAccessStart corresponding to the cable modem's manufacturer MUST NOT decrease. The value of codeAccessStart and cvcAccessStart corresponding to the co-signing agent MUST NOT decrease as long as the co-signing agent does not change and the CM maintains that co-signer's time-varying control values.

## D.3.3 Cable modem code upgrade initialization

Before the cable modem can upgrade code, it should be properly initialized. Its manufacturer first initializes the cable modem. Every time a cable modem registers on a Data Over Cable System network, it MUST check its current initialization state with respect to the operational needs of the particular network. It may be necessary for the cable modem to reinitialize at registration; particularly if the cable modem has moved from one network to another.

### D.3.3.1 Manufacturer initialization

It is the responsibility of the manufacturer to correctly install the initial code version in the CM.

In support of code upgrade verification, values for these parameters MUST be loaded into the CM's non-volatile memory:

- 1) CM manufacturer's organizationName
- 2) Manufacturer's time-varying control values:
  - a) codeAccessStart initialization value;

b) cvcAccessStart initialization value.

The organization name of the cable modem manufacturer MUST always be present in the cable modem. The cable modem manufacturer's organizationName MAY be stored in the cable modems code image. Under normal conditions the manufacturer's organizationName SHOULD NOT change, but the present document does not prohibit a manufacturer from changing how its organizationName is stored in the CM. The manufacturer named used for code upgrade is not necessarily the same name used in the Data Over Cable System Manufacturer Certificate.

The time-varying control values, codeAccessStart and cvcAccessStart, MUST be initialized to an UTCTime compatible with the validity start time of the manufacturer's latest CVC. These time-varying values will be updated periodically under normal operation via manufacturer's CVCs that are received and verified by the cable modem.

Originally, the cable modem will not recognize a co-signing agent.

#### D.3.3.2 Network initialization

The method for initiating and obtaining CM code download files is defined in ES 201 488-2 [2]. In support of code verification, the configuration file is used as an authenticated means in which to initialize the code verification process. In the cable modem configuration file, the cable modem receives configuration settings relevant to code upgrade verification. These settings MUST NOT be used until after CMTS has successfully registered the CM.

The configuration file SHOULD always include the most up-to-date CVC applicable for the destination cable modem; but when the configuration file is used to initiate a code upgrade, it MUST include a Code Verification Certificate (CVC) to initialize the cable modem for accepting code files according to the present document. Regardless of whether a code upgrade is required, a CVC in the configuration file MUST be processed by the cable modem.

A configuration file MAY contain:

- no CVC;
- a Manufacturer's CVC only;
- a Co-Signer's (MSO) CVC only;
- both a Manufacturer's CVC and a Co-Signer's CVC.

Before the CM will enable its ability to upgrade code files on the network, it MUST receive a valid CVC in a configuration file and successfully register with the CMTS. In addition, when the cable modem's configuration file does not contain a valid CVC, and its ability to upgrade code files has been disabled, the CM MUST reject any information in a CVC subsequently delivered via SNMP.

When the cable modem's configuration file only contains a valid Manufacturer's CVC, the cable modem will only require a manufacturer signature on the code files. In this case, the CM MUST NOT accept code files that have been co-signed.

When the cable modem's configuration file contains a co-signer's CVC, it is used to initialize the cable modem with a co-signing agent. Once validated, the name of the CVC's subject organizationName will become the code co-signing agent assigned to the cable modem. In order for a CM to subsequently accept a code image, the co-signer in addition to the cable modem manufacturer MUST have signed the code file.

The organization name of the cable modem manufacturer and the manufacturer's time-varying control values MUST always be present in the cable modem. If the cable modem is initialized to accept code co-signed by an additional code-signing agent, the name of the organization and their corresponding time-varying control values MUST be stored and maintained while operational. Space MUST be allocated in the cable modem's memory for the following co-signer's control values:

- 1) co-signing agent's organizationName
- 2) co-signer's time-varying control values:
  - a) cvcAccessStart;
  - b) codeAccessStart.

The manufacturer's set of these values MUST be stored in the CM's non-volatile memory and not lost when the CM's main power source is removed or during a CM reboot process. When a co-signer is assigned to the CM, the co-signer's set of these values MUST be stored in the CM's memory. The CM MAY retain these values in non-volatile memory that will not be lost when the CM's main power source is removed or during a CM reboot process. However, when assigning a CM a co-signing agent, the CVC is always in the configuration file. Therefore, the CM will always receive the co-signer's control values during the initialization phase and is not required to store the co-signer's time-varying control values when main power is lost or during a reboot process.

#### D.3.3.2.1 Processing the configuration file CVC

When a CVC is included in the Data Over Cable System 1.1 configuration file, the CM MUST verify the CVC before accepting any of the code upgrade settings it contains. At receipt of the CVC in the configuration file, the CM MUST perform the following validation and procedural steps. If any of the following verification checks fail, the CM MUST immediately halt the CVC verification process and log the error if applicable. If the CM configuration file does not include a CVC that validates properly, the CM MUST NOT download upgrade code files whether triggered by the CM configuration file or via an SNMP MIB. In addition, if the CM configuration files does not include a CVC that validates properly, the CM is not required to process CVCs subsequently delivered via an SNMP MIB, and MUST NOT accept information from a CVC subsequently delivered via an SNMP MIB.

At receipt of the CVC in a configuration file, and after the CM has successfully registered with the CMTS, the CM MUST:

- 1) Verify that the extended key usage extension is in the CVC as defined in clause D.3.1.1.2.
- 2) Check the CVC subject organization name.

If the CVC is a Manufacturer's CVC (Type 32) then:

- a) IF, the organizationName is identical to the cable modem's manufacturer name, THEN this is the manufacturer's CVC. In this case, the CM MUST verify that the manufacturer's CVC validity start time is greater-than or equal-to the manufacturer's cvcAccessStart value currently held in the CM.
- b) IF, the organizationName is not identical to the cable modem's manufacturer name, THEN this CVC MUST be rejected and the error logged.

If the CVC is a Co-signer's CVC (Type 33) then:

- a) IF, the organizationName is identical to the cable modem's current code co-signing agent, THEN this is the current co-signer's CVC and the CM MUST verify that the validity start time is greater-than or equal-to the co-signer's cvcAccessStart value currently held in the CM.
- b) IF, the organizationName is not identical to the current code co-signing agent name, THEN after the CVC has been validated (and registration is complete) this subject organization name will become the CM's new code co-signing agent. The CM MUST NOT accept a code file unless it has been signed by the manufacturer, and co-signed by this code co-signing agent.
- 3) Validate the certificate signature using the Data Over Cable System root key held by the CM. Verification of the CVC signature will authenticate the source and validate trust in the CVC parameters.
- 4) Update the CM's current value of cvcAccessStart corresponding to the CVC's subject organizationName (i.e. manufacturer or code co-signing agent) with the validity start time value from the validated CVC. If the validity start time value is greater than the CM's current value of codeAccessStart, update the CM's codeAccessStart value with the validity start time value. The CM SHOULD discard any remnants of the CVC.

#### D.3.3.2.2 Processing the SNMP CVC

The CM MUST process SNMP delivered CVCs when enabled to upgrade code files; otherwise, all CVCs delivered via SNMP MUST be rejected. When validating the CVC delivered via SNMP, the CM MUST perform the following validation and procedural steps. If any of the following verification checks fail, the CM MUST immediately halt the CVC verification process, log the error if applicable, and remove all remnants of the process to that step.

The CM MUST:

- 1) Verify that the extended key usage extension is in the CVC as defined as defined is clause D.3.1.1.2.
- 2) Check the CVC subject organization name.
  - a) IF, the organizationName is identical to the cable modem's manufacturer name, THEN this is the manufacturer's CVC. In this case, the CM MUST verify that the manufacturer's CVC validity start time is greater-than the manufacturer's cvcAccessStart value currently held in the CM.
  - b) IF, the organizationName is identical to the cable modem's current code co-signing agent, THEN this is a current co-signer's CVC and the validity start time MUST be greater-than the co-signer's cvcAccessStart value currently held in the CM.
  - c) IF, the organizationName is not identical to cable modem's manufacturer or current code co-signing agent name, THEN the CM MUST immediately reject this CVC.
- 3) Validate the certificate signature using the Data Over Cable System root key held by the CM. Verification of the signature will authenticate the certificate and confirm trust in the CVC's validity start time.
- 4) Update the current value of the subject's cvcAccessStart values with the validated CVC's validity start time value. If the validity start time value is greater than the CM's current value of codeAccessStart, update the CM's codeAccessStart value with the validity start value. All certificate parameters EXCEPT for the validity start time are no longer needed and SHOULD be discarded.

## D.3.4 Code signing requirements

The following procedures MUST be followed when signing code files.

### D.3.4.1 Data Over Cable System Certificate Authority (CA) requirements

In addition to the Data Over Cable System Manufacturer Certificate issued to a manufacturer as described earlier in the present document, the Data Over Cable System Root CA will issue code-signing certificates called Code Verification Certificates (CVCs).

The Code Verification Certificate (CVC) is provided by the Data Over Cable System CA and signed by the Data Over Cable System Root Key (DRK). The CVCs signed by the Data Over Cable System CA MUST be exactly as specified in clause D.3.1.1.2 and only used in support of Data Over Cable System cable modem code signatures. The Data Over Cable System CA MUST not sign any CVC unless it is identical to the format specified in that clause. Before signing a CVC, the Data Over Cable System CA MUST verify that the code-signing agent is authentic and is valid code-signing agent.

The Data Over Cable System CA will be responsible for registering names of authorized code-signing agents. Code-signing agents include the CM manufacturers and MSOs that will co-sign cable modem code images. It is the responsibility of the Data Over Cable System CA to guarantee that the organization name of every code-signing agent is different. The following guidelines MUST be enforced when assigning organization names for code co-signers:

- The organization name used to identify itself as a code co-signer agent in a CVC MUST be assigned by Data Over Cable System.
- The name MUST be a printable strong of eight hexadecimal digits that uniquely distinguishes a code-signing agent from all others.
- Each hexadecimal digit in the name MUST be chosen from the character set 0-9 (0x30-0x39) or A-F (0x41-0x46).
- The string consisting of eight 0-digits is not allowed and MUST NOT be used in a CVC.

## D.3.4.2 Manufacturing requirements

To sign their code files, the manufacturer MUST obtain a valid CVC from the Data Over Cable System CA. All manufacturer code images provided to an MSO for remote upgrade of a CM on a Data Over Cable System HFC network, MUST be signed according to the requirements defined in the present document.

When signing a code file, a manufacturer MAY choose not to update the PKCS#7 signingTime value in the manufacturer's signing information. The present document requires that the PKCS#7 signingTime value be equal-to or greater-than the CVC's validity start time. If the manufacturer uses a signingTime equal to the CVC's validity start time when signing a series of code files, those code files can be used and re-used. This allows an MSO to use the code file to either upgrade or downgrade the code version for that manufacturer's cable modems. These code files will be valid until a new CVC is generated and received by the cable modem. it is recommended that a manufacturer sign their code files in this manner when Data Over Cable System and the manufacturer's security policy allows it (see clause D.4).

To conserve storage space, the CM MAY internally represent the code co-signing agent's name in an alternate format as long as all information is maintained and the original format can be reproduced; e.g. as a 32-bit nonzero integer, with an integer value of 0 representing the absence of a code-signing agent.

### D.3.4.3 MSO requirements

A Data Over Cable System MSO will receive software upgrade code files from the manufacturer. Using the Data Over Cable System root public key, the MSO should validate that the code image is as built by the trusted manufacturer. The MSO can re-verify the code file at any time by repeating the process.

The MSO has the option of co-signing the code image destined for a cable modem on their network. To do this, MSO co-signs the file content according to the PKCS#7 signature standard, and includes their Data Over Cable System-signed CVC. Data Over Cable System does not require an MSO to co-sign code files; but when the MSO follows all the rules defined in the present document for preparing a code file, the cable modem MUST accept it.

All code images downloaded to a CM across the Data Over Cable System HFC network MUST be signed according to the requirements defined in the present document.

## D.3.5 Code verification requirements

Upgrade code MUST NOT be installed unless the code is found to be trusted according to the verification process described in the present document.

The CM MUST be able to process a PKCS#7 digital signature and a Data Over Cable System X.509 certificate as defined in the present document. The CM does not have to support the full range of the PKCS#7 and X.509 specifications.

### D.3.5.1 Cable Modem Code verification steps

When downloading code the CM MUST perform the verification checks presented in this clause. If any of the verification checks fail, or if any clause of the code file is rejected due to invalid formatting, the CM MUST immediately halt the download process, log the error if applicable, remove all remnants of the process to that step, and continue to operate with its existing code. The verification checks can be made in any order, as long as all of the applicable checks presented in this clause are made.

- 1) The CM MUST validate the manufacturer's signature information by verifying that:
  - a) The PKCS#7 signingTime value is equal-to or greater-than the manufacturer's codeAccessStart value currently held in the CM.
  - b) The PKCS#7 signingTime value is equal-to or greater-than the manufacturer's CVC validity start time.
  - c) The PKCS#7 signingTime value is less-than or equal-to the manufacturer's CVC validity end time.
- 2) The CM MUST validate the manufacturer's CVC by verifying that:
  - a) The CVC subject organizationName is identical to the manufacturer name currently stored in the CM's memory.

- b) The CVC validity start time is equal-to or greater-than the manufacturer's cvcAccessStart value currently held in the CM.
- c) The extended key usage extension is in the CVC as defined in clause D.3.1.1.2.
- 3) The CM MUST validate the certificate signature using the Data Over Cable System root key held by the CM. Verification of the signature will authenticate the source of the public Code Verification Key (CVK) and confirm trust in the key. Once trust has been established in the manufacturer's CVK, the remaining certificate parameters EXCEPT for the validity start time are no longer needed and SHOULD be discarded.
- 4) The CM MUST verify the manufacturer's code file signature.
  - a) The CM MUST perform a new SHA-1 hash over the SignedContent. If the value of the messageDigest does not match the new hash, the CM MUST consider the signature on the code file as invalid.
  - b) If the signature does not verify, all components of the code file (including the code image), and any values derived from the verification process MUST be rejected and SHOULD be immediately discarded.
- 5) If the manufacturer signature verifies and a co-signing agent signature is required:
  - a) The CM MUST validate the co-signer's signature information by verifying that:
    - i) The co-signer's signature information is included in the code file.
    - ii) The PKCS#7 signingTime value is equal-to or greater-than the corresponding codeAccessStart value currently held in the CM.
    - iii) The PKCS#7 signingTime value is equal-to or greater-than the corresponding CVC validity start time.
    - iv) The PKCS#7 signingTime value is less-than or equal-to the corresponding CVC validity end time.
  - b) The CM MUST validate the co-signer's CVC, by verifying that:
    - i) The CVC subject organizationName is identical to the co-signer's organization name currently stored in the CM's memory.
    - ii) The CVC validity start time is equal-to or greater-than the cvcAccessStart value currently held in the CM for the corresponding subject organizationName.
    - iii) The extended key usage extension is in the CVC as defined in clause D.3.1.1.2.
  - c) The CM MUST validate the certificate signature using the Data Over Cable System root key held by the CM. Verification of the signature will authenticate the source of the co-signer's public Code Verification Key (CVK) and confirm trust in the key. Once trust has been established in the co-signer's CVK, the remaining certificate parameters EXCEPT for the validity start time are no longer needed and SHOULD be discarded.
  - d) The CM MUST verify the co-signer's code file signature.
  - e) The CM MUST perform a new SHA-1 hash over the SignedContent. If the value of the messageDigest does not match the new hash, the CM MUST consider the signature on the code file as invalid.
  - f) If the signature does not verify, all components of the code file (including the code image), and any values derived from the verification process MUST be rejected and SHOULD be immediately discarded.
- 6) If the manufacturer's, and optionally the co-signer's, signature has verified, the code image can be trusted and installation may proceed. Before installing the code image, all other components of the code file and any values derived from the verification process except the PKCS#7 signingTime values and the CVC validity start values SHOULD be immediately discarded.
- 7) The CM may upgrade its software by installing the code file according to ES 201 488-2 [2].
- 8) If the code installation is unsuccessful, the CM MUST reject the PKCS#7 signingTime values and CVC validity start values it just received in the code file. Follow the steps outlined in ES 201 488-2 [2] for handling this failure condition.

- 9) When the code installation is successful, the CM MUST update the manufacturer's time-varying controls with the values from the manufacturer's signature information and CVC:
  - a) Update the current value of codeAcessStart with the PKCS#7 signingTime value.
  - b) Update the current value cvcAccessStart with the CVC validity start value.
- 10) When the code installation is successful, IF the code file was co-signed, the CM MUST update the co-signer's time-varying controls with the values from the co-signer's signature information and CVC:
  - a) Update the current value of codeAccessStart with the PKCS#7 signingTime value.
  - b) Update the current value of cvcAccessStart with the CVC validity start value.

## D.3.6 DOCSIS 1.0 interoperability

Data Over Cable System 1.1 cable modems MUST verify code upgrades according to the present document even when operating with a DOCSIS 1.0 environment.

DOCSIS 1.0 configuration files intended for Data Over Cable System 1.1 cable modems MUST support the configuration file requirements that are defined in the present document.

Data Over Cable System 1.1 cable modems MUST receive Data Over Cable System 1.1 compliant code files. The upgrade files pass through the DOCSIS 1.0 system untouched, and will not require modification of the DOCSIS 1.0 code file handling requirements.

In a DOCSIS 1.0 environment where Data Over Cable System 1.1 cable modems are receiving code upgrade files, the SNMP manager SHOULD support the MIBs defined for Data Over Cable System 1.1 code verification. The availability of this MIB capability is important to the proper operation and security of the Data Over Cable System 1.1 code upgrade process.

## D.3.7 Error codes

Error codes are defined to reflect the failure states possible during the code verification process. Description and usage guidelines for these error codes can be found in SCTE 79-2 [30].

- 1) Improper code file controls:
  - a) CVC subject organizationName for manufacturer does not match the CM's manufacturer name.
  - b) CVC subject organizationName for code co-signing agent does not match the CM's current code co-signing agent.
  - c) The manufacturer's PKCS#7 signingTime value is less-than the codeAccessStart value currently held in the CM.
  - d) The manufacturer's PKCS#7 validity start time value is less-than the cvcAccessStart value currently held in the CM.
  - e) The manufacturer's CVC validity start time is less-than the cvcAccessStart value currently held in the CM.
  - f) The manufacturer's PKCS#7 signingTime value is less-than the CVC validity start time.
  - g) Missing or improper extended key-usage extension in the manufacturer CVC.
  - h) The co-signer's PKCS#7 signingTime value is less-than the codeAccessStart value currently held in the CM.
  - i) The co-signer's PKCS#7 validity start time value is less-than the cvcAccessStart value currently held in the CM.
  - j) The co-signer's CVC validity start time is less-than the cvcAccessStart value currently held in the CM.

k) The co-signer's PKCS#7 signingTime value is less-than the CVC validity start time.

128

- 1) Missing or improper extended key-usage extension in the co-signer's CVC.
- 2) Code file manufacturer CVC validation failure.
- 3) Code file manufacturer CVS validation failure.
- 4) Code file co-signer CVC validation failure.
- 5) Code file co-signer CVS validation failure.
- 6) Improper Configuration File CVC format:
  - a) Missing or improper key usage attribute.
- 7) Configuration File CVC validation failure.
- 8) Improper SNMP CVC format:
  - a) CVC subject organizationName for manufacturer does not match the CM's manufacturer name.
  - b) CVC subject organizationName for code co-signing agent does not match the CM's current code co-signing agent.
  - c) The CVC validity start time is less-than or equal-to the corresponding subject's cvcAccessStart value currently held in the CM.
  - d) Missing or improper key usage attribute.
- 9) SNMP CVC validation failure.

## D.4 Security considerations (informative)

The protection afforded private keys is a critical factor in maintaining security. Users authorized to sign code, i.e. manufacturers and operators who have been issued Code-signing Verification Certificates (CVCs) by the Data Over Cable System root CA, must protect their private keys. An attacker with access to the private key of an authorized code-signing user can create, at will, code files that are potentially acceptable to a large number of CMs.

The defence against such an attack is for the operator to revoke the certificate whose associated code-signing private key has been learned by the attacker. To revoke a certificate, the operator must deliver to each affected CM an updated CVC with a validity start time that is newer than that of the certificate(s) being revoked. The new CVC can be delivered via any of the supported mechanisms: configuration file, code file, or SNMP MIB. The new CVC implicitly revokes all certificates whose validity start time is older than that of the new CVC.

To reduce the vulnerability to this sort of attack, it is important that an operator regularly update the CVC in each CM, at a frequency comparable to how often the operator would update a Certificate Revocation List (CRL) if one were available. Regular update helps manage the time interval during which a compromised code-signing key is useful to an attacker. Regardless of where you are in the CVC update cycle, CVCs should also be updated if it is suspected that a code-signing key has been compromised. To update the CVC, the user needs a Data Over Cable System-issued CVC whose validity start time is newer than the CVC in the CM. This implies that the Data Over Cable System root CA must regularly issue new CVCs to all authorized code-signing manufacturers and operators, to make the CVCs available for update. Data Over Cable System is likely to establish a policy about the schedule for which it issues new CVCs, and operators will likely want to coordinate their update policy with that schedule.

When a CM is attempting to register on the network for the first time or after being off-line for any amount of time, it is important that it receive a trusted CVC as soon as possible. This provides the CM with the opportunity to receive the most up-to-date CVC available and deny access to CVCs that needed to be revoked since the CM last initialization. The first opportunity for the CM to receive a trusted CVC is in its configuration file. If the configuration file does not include a valid CVC, the CM will not request or have the ability to remotely upgrade code files. In addition, the CM will not accept CVCs subsequently delivered via an SNMP MIB.

129

To mitigate the possibility of a CM receiving a previous code file via a replay attack, the code files include a signing-time value in the PKCS#7 structure that can be used to indicate the time the code image was signed. When the CM receives a code file signing-time that is later than the signing-time it last received, it will update its internal memory with this value. The CM will not accept code files with an earlier signing-time than this internally stored value. To upgrade a CM with a new code file without denying access to past code files, the signer may choose not to update the signing-time. In this manner, multiple code files with the same code signing-time allow an operator to freely downgrade a CMs code image to a past version (that is, until the CVC is updated). This has a number of advantages for the operator, but these advantages should be weighed against the possibilities of a code file replay attack.

Without a reliable mechanism to revert back to a known good version of code, any code-update scheme, including the one in the present document, has the weakness that a single, successful forced update of an invalid code image by a CM may render the CM useless. Even worse, an invalid code image may cause the CM to behave in a malicious way harmful to the network. Such a CM may not be repairable via a remote code update, since the invalid code image may not support the update scheme.

# Annex E (informative): Upgrading from BPI to BPI+

# E.1 Hybrid cable modem with BPI+

Some DOCSIS 1.0 CM designs may be capable of supporting BPI+ features via a software upgrade. To facilitate these 'DOCSIS 1.0 Hybrid CMs', ES 201 488-2 [2] provides the Modem Capabilities Encodings which the Hybrid CM can put in the Registration Request message in order to negotiate its Data Over Cable System 1.1 features with the CMTS.

130

A DOCSIS 1.0 Hybrid Cable Modem MAY set Privacy Support Modem Capabilities Setting to 1 (BPI Plus Support) if the CM is fully BPI+ compliant except the following points.

- Support of 56-bit DES if the CM supports only 40-bit DES.
- Support of 1 024-bit RSA key if the CM supports 768-bit RSA key.
- The permanent, write-once memory for the manufacturer-issued CM certificates.
- Encryption of the concatenated packets if the Concatenation Support Modem Capabilities Encoding is set to 0 (off).
- Encryption of the fragmentation packets if the Fragmentation Support Modem Capabilities Encoding is set to 0 (off).
- Encryption of the PHS (Payload Header Suppression) packets if the Payload Header Suppression Support Modem Capabilities Encoding is set to 0 (off).

The Hybrid CM with BPI+ will be interoperable with both the BPI+ CMTS and the BPI CMTS with 56-bit and 40-bit DES. The requirement for the BPI/BPI+ interoperability in addition to annex C is:

a) If a Hybrid CM with BPI+ supports only 40-bit DES and it runs in BPI+ mode, it MUST send the Auth Request message with the Security-Capabilities attribute to specify the 40-bit DES and the CMTS MUST operate with the CM in 40-bit DES mode specified in the clause 10.1.

# E.2 Upgrading procedure

The BPI+ features MAY be downloaded into the DOCSIS 1.0 CM by the following procedures.

- Download the software code image with BPI+ and BPI+ MIB features into the CM using the software downloading function defined by DOCSIS 1.0 Specification. The manufacturer CA certificate signed by the Data Over Cable System root private key is embedded in this software code image.
- Set the CM certificate signed by the manufacturer's private key and the Data Over Cable System Root CA's public key to the CM using the BPI+ MIB if the CM does not have these information yet. Detail of these BPI+ MIB objects for this operation will be defined by [7].

Note that the CM can neither run in BPI+ mode nor set Privacy Support Modem Capabilities Setting to 1 (BPI Plus Support) until the CM certificate and the Data Over Cable System Root CA's public key are set to the CM.

# History

	Document history						
V1.2.1	January 2003	Publication					
V1.2.2	August 2003	Membership Approval Procedure MV 20031010: 2003-08-12 to 2003-10-10					